



F-Pace US/English

## ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

## IMPORTANT

**The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which will not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.**

**The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the North American market. If the vehicle is registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.**

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the internet site, **<http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com>**.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

## SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK



This safety alert symbol precedes any safety message about a risk of personal injury. It will also have one of the following signal words.

Warning:

Indicates a hazardous situation that could result in death or serious injury.

Caution:

Indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol indicates items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Retailer/Authorized Repairer and/or your local authority.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## VEHICLE STABILITY

### Warning:

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. Warning:

Since this vehicle is designed to be operated off-road, it has a higher ground clearance and hence a higher center of gravity. Such a feature has been associated with an increased risk of vehicle rollover.

The vehicle is not designed for cornering at the same speed as conventional passenger cars any more than a low-slung sports car is designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. If at all possible, avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate the vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover.

Another factor shown to significantly increase rollover risk is unauthorized vehicle modifications such as fitting incorrect specification tires, oversize tires, body lifting, incorrect springs/dampers, incorrect vehicle loading/trailer towing.

Many vehicle rollovers occur when a driver attempts to bring a vehicle back onto the road after some or all of the wheels drift onto the shoulder of the road, especially when the shoulder is unpaved. If you find yourself in such a situation, do not initiate any sharp or abrupt steering and/or braking maneuvers to re- enter the roadway. Instead, let the vehicle slow down as much as is safely possible before attempting to re-enter the roadway and keep your wheels as straight as possible while re-entering the roadway.

However, on-road crash data also indicates that driver behavior is a greater factor than a high center of gravity in determining a vehicle's overall rollover rate. The single most effective driver behavior that can reduce the risk of injury or death in all crashes including rollover is to **ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SEAT BELT** and to properly restrain all child passengers in the rear seat in an age and size appropriate child safety seat or belt positioning booster seat.

## Warning:

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (USA)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign.

However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Jaguar Land Rover North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800- 424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE, Washington, DC 20590.

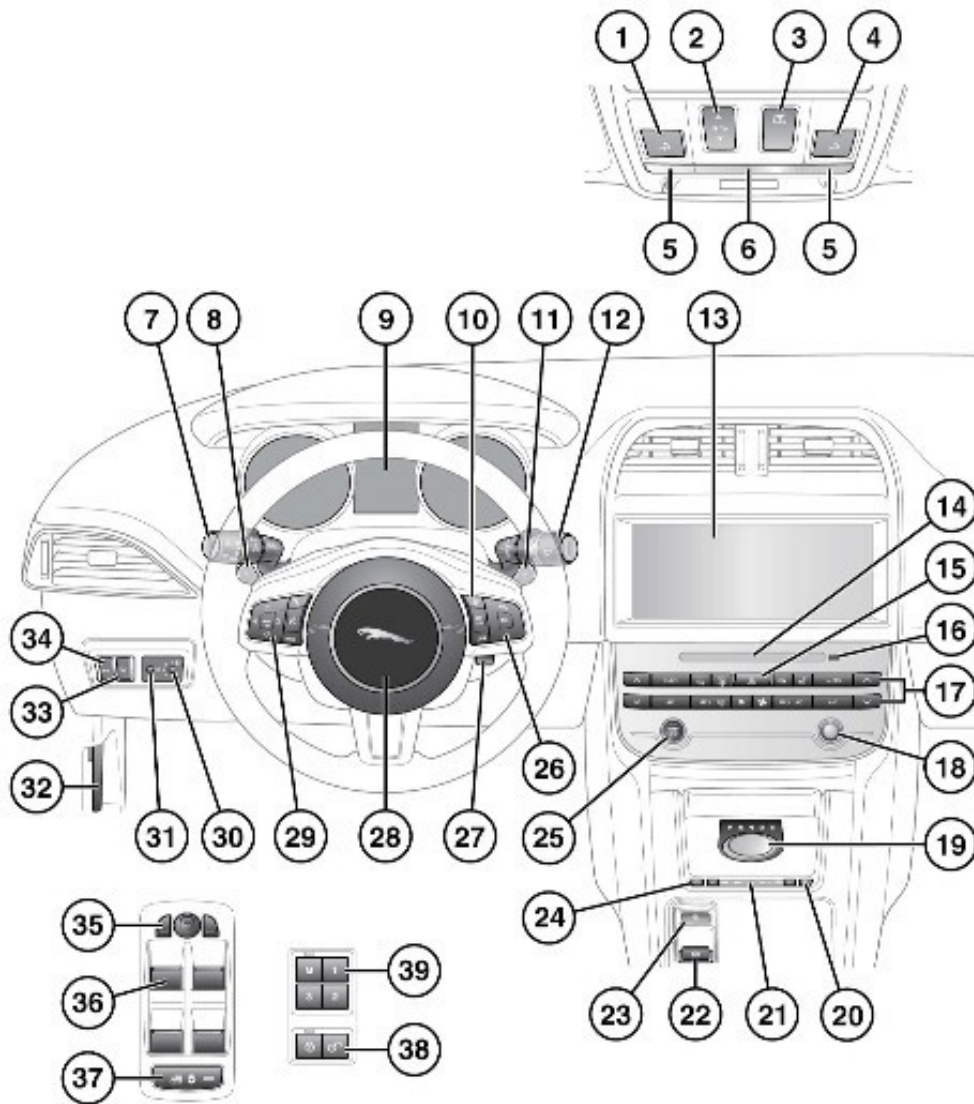
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada in addition to notifying Jaguar Land Rover Canada ULC.

To contact Transport Canada, call their toll-free number: 1-800-333-0510

## DRIVER CONTROLS



E1.020.06

Note:

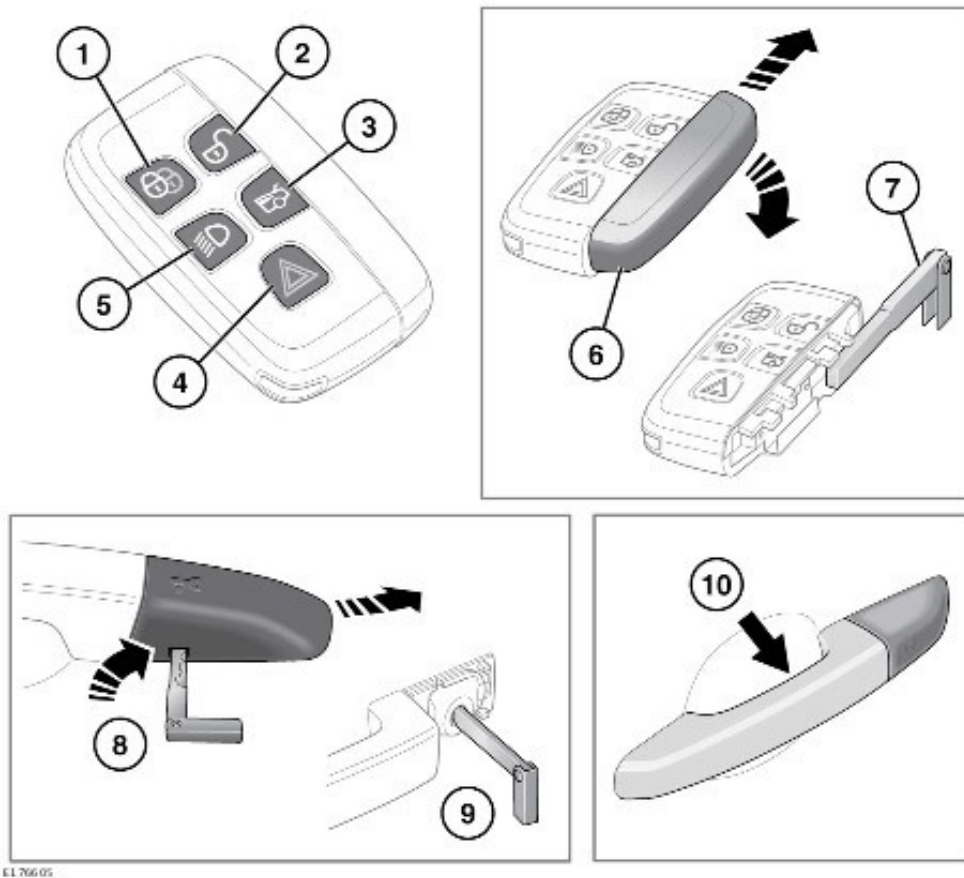
Numbers in brackets refer to the page number where extra information can be found.

1. InControl Protect - Optimized assistance call ([INCONTROL PROTECT](#)).
2. Sunroof ([ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#)).
3. Sunroof blind ([ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#)).
4. InControl Protect - SOS emergency call ([INCONTROL PROTECT](#)).
5. Front reading lamp ([INTERIOR LIGHTS](#)).
6. Front interior courtesy lamp ([INTERIOR LIGHTS](#)).
7. Exterior lamps and Trip computer controls ([LIGHTING CONTROL/USING THE TRIP COMPUTER](#)).
8. Down-shift gear paddle ([AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION](#)).

9. Instrument panel and Message center ([INSTRUMENT PANEL](#)).
10. Heated steering wheel ([HEATED STEERING WHEEL](#)).
11. Up-shift gear paddle ([AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION](#)).
12. Wipers/washers controls ([WIPER OPERATION](#)).
13. Touchscreen.
14. CD/DVD loading slot.
15. Hazard warning lamps.
16. CD/DVD eject button.
17. Air Conditioning (A/C) controls ([CLIMATE CONTROL](#)).
18. Audio on/off and volume control ([MEDIA CONTROLS](#)).
19. Rotary gear selector ([AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION](#)).
20. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) ([DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\)](#)).
21. Driving modes ([DRIVING MODES OPERATION](#)).
22. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) ([ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE \(EPB\)](#)).
23. Progress control ([PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM OVERVIEW](#)).
24. Intelligent Stop/Start ([INTELLIGENT STOP/START](#)).
25. Engine START/STOP ([STARTING THE ENGINE](#)).
26. Cruise control ([USING CRUISE CONTROL](#)), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ([USING ACC](#)), or Speed limiter ([SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW](#)).
27. Steering wheel adjuster ([ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL](#)).
28. Horn.
29. Audio controls, Voice control, and Phone ([AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS/USING VOICE CONTROL/STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS](#)).
30. Halogen headlamp levelling ([HEADLAMP LEVELLING](#)).
31. Interior illumination control ([INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY](#)).
32. Hood release ([OPENING THE HOOD](#)).
33. Lane departure warning ([LANE DEPARTURE WARNING \(LDW\)](#)).
34. Luggage compartment lid release/open ([OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT](#)).

- 35. Mirror adjustment/power-folding mirrors ([EXTERIOR MIRRORS](#)).
- 36. Window controls ([ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#)).
- 37. Rear window isolator ([ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#)).
- 38. Doors lock/unlock ([DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS](#)).
- 39. Driver's seat position memory ([DRIVING POSITION MEMORY](#)).

## UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



### Warning:

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 8.7 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see [SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS](#).

### Warning:

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key is inside the vehicle.

### Note:

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

### Note:

If any door, or the luggage compartment, is unlocked 10 times within a short period, the locking latch is disabled for approximately 1 minute.

The vehicle is supplied with two smart keys. The smart keys act as remote controls for the locking and alarm system. They allow the vehicle to be locked, unlocked, and driven without the use of a conventional key. Each smart key also has an emergency key housed behind a slide-off cover. See

## PASSIVE ENTRY, PASSIVE LOCKING and STARTING THE ENGINE.

1. Lock: Press to secure the vehicle. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold in. See [LOCK CONFIRMATION](#).
2. Unlock: Press briefly to unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lights flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm is disarmed. The interior lights illuminate to assist entry to the vehicle.

If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they unfold. Press and hold to activate global opening. See [GLOBAL OPENING](#).

3. Luggage compartment: Press briefly to release, open or close the luggage compartment. If the vehicle is locked and armed, the security system remains active while the luggage compartment is open.

When closing, if the vehicle is already locked and armed, the hazard warning lights flash after a few seconds to confirm that the alarm system is re-armed. See [CONVERTIBLE - OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT](#).

Note:

Make sure the smart key does not remain in the vehicle before closing. It may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Also, if the vehicle is in an area of localised Radio Frequency (RF) interference, it may not be detected. If the smart key is not detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle locks. The vehicle does not automatically unlock. The vehicle now unlocks only with another valid smart key.

4. Panic alarm:

Press and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds) to activate the horn and the hazard lights.

Once active for more than 5 seconds, the alarm can be canceled. Press the button and hold for 3 seconds (or press three times within 3 seconds).

The panic alarm also cancels if a valid smart key is present when the **START/STOP** button is pressed.

5. Headlights:

When approaching the vehicle during darkness, press to switch on the approach illumination. Press again to switch approach illumination off.

The approach illumination preset delay period is 30 seconds. This delay period can be configured to provide illumination lasting between 0 and 240 seconds. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

6. Emergency key access: Slide open the side cover to release, then remove.
7. Emergency key blade: Remove and unfold.
8. Door lock cover: If the smart key fails to open the vehicle, insert the key blade into the slot at the base of the driver's door lock cover. Apply slight downward pressure to the top of the cover and



gently lever the key blade upwards. Carefully rotate the door lock cover upwards, to lever the cover off the retaining lugs.

9. Door lock: Insert the key blade into the exposed lock and turn to operate the lock. The alarm sounds until the smart key is positioned correctly to disarm the alarm. See [KEYLESS START BACKUP](#).

Note:

When replacing the door lock cover, locate the top retaining lugs first. Press down and inwards to locate the single bottom lug. The lug clicks into the locked position. Check the security of the cover. An insecure cover is likely to fall off while the vehicle is moving.

10. Passive entry and exit: Exterior door handles have separate unlock and lock sensors. The unlock sensor is located on the inner surface of the handle.

Note:

Notify your retailer/authorized repairer immediately if a smart key is lost or stolen. A replacement smart key can be obtained only from a retailer/authorized repairer. The retailer/authorized repairer will require proof of identification and ownership.

## SINGLE/MULTI-POINT ENTRY

To unlock the vehicle and disarm the alarm system, press the smart key unlock button. The vehicle unlocks in one of two ways:

1. Single-point entry: Unlocks the driver's door only. A second press is required to unlock the remaining doors and the luggage compartment.
2. Multi-point entry: Unlocks all of the doors and the luggage compartment on the first press.

To change from single to multi-point entry (or vice versa), on the smart key, press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm the change.

This feature may also be set via the Vehicle settings menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

If an audible warning is emitted when the vehicle is unlocked, there may be a fault with the alarm sensors. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

## PASSIVE ENTRY

Passive entry allows the vehicle to be opened if a smart key is within 39 in (1 m) of the door handle or the luggage compartment exterior switch.

Note:

The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a backlit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting passive entry, passive locking or push button starting.

Note:

The smart key needs only to be on the driver's person, or in a non-metallic bag or briefcase. It does not need to be exposed or handled.

The passive entry sensor is located on the inner surface of the door handle. Grip and pull the door handle to open the door. The vehicle unlocks, the alarm system disarms, and the hazard warning lights flash twice to confirm unlocking. If power-fold mirrors are enabled, they fold out.

Note:

When single-point entry is the current security setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all of the doors unlock.

After entering the vehicle, and all of the doors are closed, the vehicle scans the interior for a valid smart key. If a valid smart key is not detected, the message center displays the message, **SMART KEY NOT FOUND**. If this situation occurs, use a valid smart key to carry out the keyless start backup procedure. See [KEYLESS START BACKUP](#).

## ACTIVITY KEY

The activity key is a security wrist strap devised to support activities, for example, swimming, when the smart key would be obtrusive or difficult to keep secure. While the activity key is worn on the wrist, the smart key can remain inside the vehicle. When the activity key is activated, the vehicle locks, the alarm system arms, and any smart key remaining inside the vehicle disables.

Activity key - locking:

The ignition must be switched off. After exiting the vehicle and closing the last open door, the antenna for the activity key activates for 30 seconds. The antenna is located behind the "J" letter of the tailgate Jaguar badge. The user will have this time to place the activity key wrist strap against the "J" letter. When the security pairing is complete, the vehicle locks and arms the alarm system. The hazard warning lamps flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are fitted and enabled, they fold in.

Note:

When the vehicle is locked with the activity key, any valid smart key remaining inside the vehicle disables. Any valid smart key outside the vehicle remains enabled.

Activity key - unlocking:

When returning to the vehicle, reactivate the antenna by pressing the tailgate release switch. The antenna activates for 30 seconds, allowing the user to place the activity key wrist strap against the "J" letter. When the antenna recognizes the activity key, the vehicle unlocks and disarms the alarm system. The hazard warning lamps flash to confirm. If power-fold mirrors are fitted and enabled, they unfold.

Note:

When the vehicle is unlocked with the activity key, any valid smart key inside the vehicle is reenabled.

## GLOBAL OPENING

To unlock the vehicle and open all of the windows simultaneously, press and hold the smart key unlock button for 3 seconds.

To cancel global opening, press any of the buttons on the smart key.

Note:

Global opening can be enabled and disabled via the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

## CONVENIENCE MODE

When the driver's door is opened using either the smart key or passive entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

1. Driver position memory.
2. Seat and steering column adjustment.
3. Interior and exterior lighting.
4. Message center.
5. Auxiliary power socket.

## SMART KEY SYSTEM TRANSMITTERS

Warning:

Keep any implanted medical device at least 8.7 in (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device. Interference may cause the implanted medical device to malfunction, causing serious injury or death. For more information on the locations of the security system transmitters, see [SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS](#).

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE

Warning:

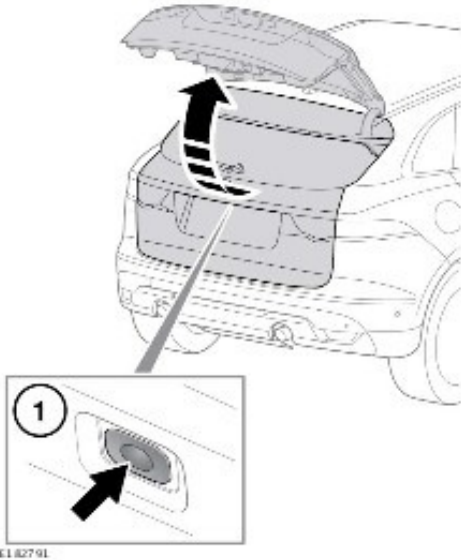
While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.

Caution:

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Caution:

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



Tailgate release: Press to release and then lift the tailgate to open.

Note: The tailgate external release operates if all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park

(P) position. If the gear selector is in the Neutral (N) position, the external release operates only if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in Convenience mode or switched off. It does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.

The tailgate can also be released using the following methods:

1. The interior tailgate release switch.
2. The Smart key tailgate release button.

Note: The tailgate does not open if the vehicle is traveling at, or above, approximately 3 mph (5 km/h).

Closing the tailgate: As the closing tailgate reaches its lowest position, it automatically 'soft closes' to the fully closed position. Do not slam the tailgate.

Note:

If a valid Smart key cannot be detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.

Note:

If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smartphone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc.

Note:

Make sure the tailgate is fully closed before leaving the vehicle unattended. Visible and audible warnings

indicate if the vehicle is locked and the alarm armed. If there are no visible or audible warnings upon closing the tailgate, the vehicle may be unprotected.

## OPENING AND CLOSING THE POWERED TAILGATE

### Warning:

Before operating the tailgate, make sure that anyone in the vicinity does not have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Note that the 'soft close' action does not incorporate object detection. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an object detection system.

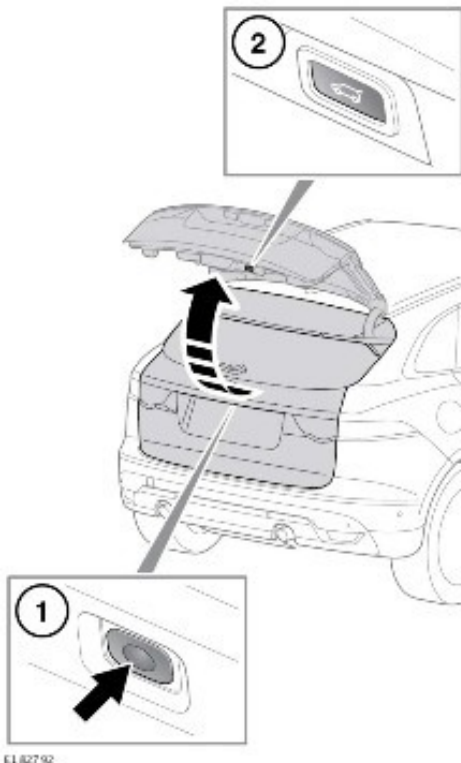
While the tailgate is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.

### Caution:

Make sure there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

### Caution:

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.



1. Tailgate open/close: Press to open, stop, reverse direction or close the tailgate.

### Note:

The tailgate external release operates when all of the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in the Park (**P**) position. When the gear selector is in the Neutral (**N**) position, the external release operates only if all of the doors are unlocked, and the ignition is in Convenience mode or switched off. It does not operate if the gear selector is in any other position.

2. Tailgate close switch: Press to close/stop the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be opened using the following methods.

1. The interior tailgate release switch
2. The Smart key tailgate release button.

Note:

The interior tailgate release switch and the Smart key tailgate release button cannot be used to close the tailgate.

After the tailgate has opened to its set height, it can be manually raised or lowered. If the tailgate fails to open or close correctly, close it manually and then press the tailgate release switch again.

As the closing tailgate approaches the closed position, it 'soft closes' to the fully closed position. If the vehicle was previously locked, the alarm re-arms. The hazard warning lamps flash to confirm the alarm status. An audible confirmation may also be given.

Note:

If a tailgate switch is pressed while the tailgate is opening or closing, all movement stops. However, if a switch is pressed during the 'soft close' stage, it is ignored.

Object detection while opening: If an object is detected that would interfere with the tailgate opening, tailgate movement stops. Remove any obstructions and press the tailgate switch again to open.

Object detection while closing: If an object is detected that would interfere with a tailgate closing, tailgate movement stops and then reverses to the fully open position, if able to do so. An audible warning is given to indicate a mislock. Remove any obstructions and if the tailgate is open, press the tailgate switch again to close the tailgate. If the tailgate is not open, press a tailgate release switch to open the tailgate, remove any obstructions. Once the obstructions have been removed, press the tailgate close switch to close the tailgate.

Note:

If a valid Smart key cannot be detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, the tailgate does not power close. An audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock.

Note:

If the tailgate is closed manually, the vehicle searches for a valid Smart key. If no Smart key is detected within 39 in (1 m) of the rear of the vehicle, or a Smart key remains inside the vehicle, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds.

Note:

If the Smart key is inadvertently left inside the luggage compartment and the vehicle is locked and the alarm set, an audible warning sounds to indicate a mislock and the tailgate re-opens after approximately 3 seconds. The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smartphone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc.

## TAILGATE OPENING HEIGHT

The maximum opening height can be set as required:

1. Open the tailgate to the position required as the maximum height. Press any tailgate control to stop movement at the required position. The final position can be achieved manually, if required.
2. Make sure the tailgate is stationary for at least 3 seconds.
3. Press and hold the tailgate close switch for 10 seconds to set the maximum opening height.
4. Close the tailgate, then open again to check that it opens to the set height.

Note:

If, after performing part **3** of the process, the tailgate closes automatically, the required height has not been set. Repeat the process, making sure that all steps are adhered to.

To reset the maximum opening height, repeat the process, but when the tailgate reaches its current set height, manually move it to the fully open position before pressing and holding the button.

The powered tailgate may lose its position memory if there are multiple object detections or, if the battery voltage is low. Powered operation may be inhibited.

To reset the tailgate:

1. Manually close the tailgate.
2. Press a release switch.
3. Allow the tailgate to power fully open, or to the previously set position.
4. Press and release the close switch.
5. Allow the tailgate to power close fully. The tailgate's programmed memory is now restored.

## GESTURE TAILGATE

Caution:

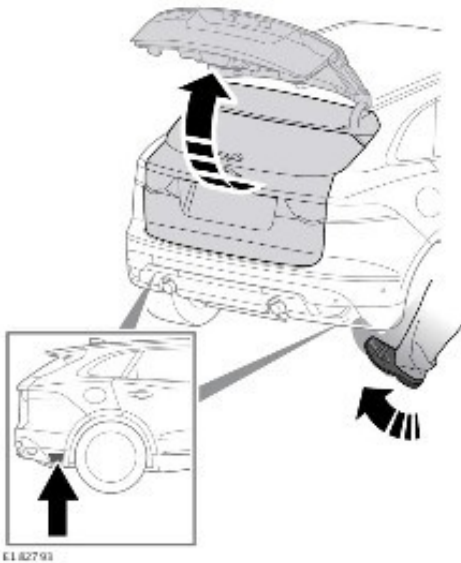
Make sure that there is sufficient space above and at the rear of the vehicle, before operating the tailgate. Insufficient opening space may result in damage to the vehicle.

Caution:

Do not operate the tailgate if a cycle rack is fitted to the tailgate. Remove any cycles and/or racks before operating the tailgate.

Sensors, positioned within the outer parts of the rear bumper, recognize movement of a foot

below the bumper level and allow automatic opening or closing of a powered tailgate.



Approach the vehicle, and perform a smooth kick and return motion. This should last between 1 and 2 seconds and take place within 1 of the vehicle's 2 sensor areas, as illustrated. When a valid kick movement is recognized by the vehicle, the turn signals flash and the tailgate operates.

Note:

If the ignition is on, the tailgate operates, but the turn signals do not flash.

If an audible warning occurs, the tailgate does not operate.

Warning:

Make sure that the standing area is stable and not slippery, before performing the kick movement.

Warning:

Do not make contact with the vehicle exhaust. It may be hot and cause injury.

Note:

A valid Smart key must be within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate. The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smartphone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting hands-free operation of the powered tailgate.

Note:

Certain conditions may affect the performance of the sensors, and movement beneath the bumper may not be detected. If this should happen, use the interior tailgate release switch or the Smart key tailgate release button. Check the operation of the Gesture tailgate when the vehicle is in a new location.



Unintentional opening: In exceptional circumstances, and if the Smart key is within 47 in (1.2 m) of the tailgate, the powered tailgate may open unintentionally due to the following:

1. Car washing/high pressure cleaning.
2. Moving objects beneath the rear bumper sensors.
3. While changing a rear road wheel.

## DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

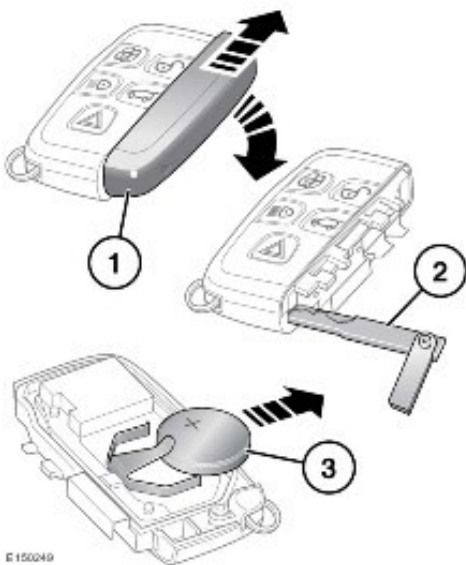
Drive-away locking automatically locks all of the doors when the vehicle reaches a set speed. This drive-away locking feature can be enabled or disabled via **Drive-away locking** in the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

Press the unlock or lock button on the driver or front passenger door after drive-away locking has taken place, to override drive-away locking for the current journey. See [DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS](#).

## SMART KEY BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and the message **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** displays in the message center.



To replace the battery:

1. Remove the cover by sliding in the directions of the arrows.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the body of the smart key.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery (available from a retailer/authorized repairer) with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note:

Avoid touching the new battery. Moisture or oil from fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts.

Note:

If the low battery warning does not extinguish, it indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.

Refit the parts in reverse order, making sure that they click securely into place.



**Battery disposal:** Batteries contain harmful substances and must be disposed of correctly. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer and/or the local authority.

## SMART KEY CARE

Warning:

To prevent accidental or unauthorized operation, never leave the smart key unattended in the vehicle. Never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the smart key remains inside the vehicle.

Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, or humidity, or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the smart key exposed to direct sunlight.

The emergency key blade number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and keep it safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the smart key varies considerably, depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note:

The Radio Frequency (RF) used by the smart key may be used by other devices (e.g., medical equipment). This may prevent the smart key from operating correctly.

## SINGLE LOCKING

Warning:

When exiting the vehicle, always make sure of the following: Park (P) gear is selected. The engine is switched off. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied. The smart key is removed from the vehicle.

This is to protect the safety of those inside and outside the vehicle. Caution:

No modifications or additions should be made to the security system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Press the lock button on the smart key, briefly, to lock the vehicle and arm the perimeter (exterior) alarm. The hazard warning lights flash to confirm.

Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors from being opened from the outside. The doors may still be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle.

Once armed, the alarm activates if:

1. The hood, luggage compartment or a door is opened.
2. The engine **START/STOP** button is pressed without a valid smart key present.
3. The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
4. An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
5. An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

Note:

Always secure the vehicle when left unattended.

## PASSIVE LOCKING

Note:

The smart key may not be detected if it is inside a metal container, or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, e.g., a smartphone. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting passive entry, passive locking or push button starting. Loose coins in the same pocket as the smart key can also act as a shield.

Note:

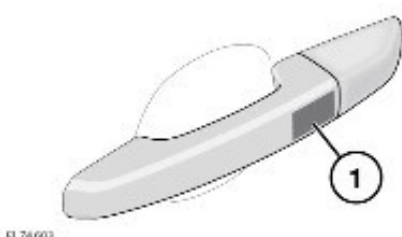
Loose coins, in the same pocket as the smart key, can act as a shield and may affect its detection.

Note:

The vehicle does not lock automatically.

Note:

Passive locking activates only if the smart key is detected outside of the vehicle. If no smart key is present, no locking does occur.



To operate passive locking:

1. Lock sensor area: To lock the vehicle, touch only the lock sensor once without gripping the door handle. The hazard warning lights flash once to confirm locking.

Note:

Do not grip the door handle while touching the sensor; doing so prevents the vehicle from locking.

When using passive locking, the vehicle does NOT lock when:

1. any door(s) is open.
2. the hood is open.
3. the luggage compartment is not fully closed.
4. the ignition is on.

No audible mislock error warning is given. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors (if enabled) do not fold in.

Make sure that the ignition is switched off, and that all of the doors, the hood and the luggage compartment are closed properly. Lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult your retailer/authorized repairer.

## LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed, press the lock button on the smart key. With passive entry, touch an exterior door handle lock sensor. The hazard warning lights flash once to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

Note:

If the vehicle is not already locked and armed, pressing the lock button locks the vehicle.

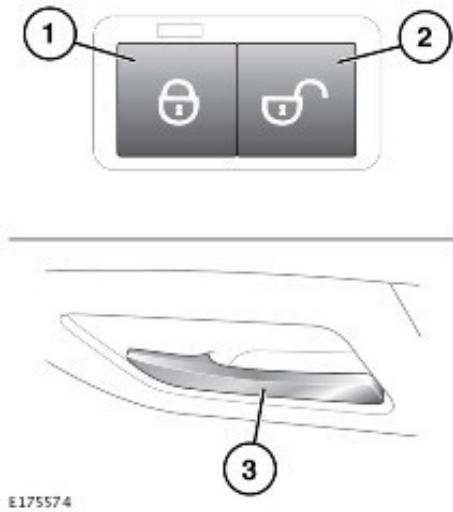
## MISLOCK

When locking the vehicle with the smart key, a mislock can occur if:

1. One or more of the doors, the hood, or the luggage compartment is not fully closed.
2. The ignition is switched on.
3. A smart key is left inside the vehicle.

If any of the above are present, the vehicle does NOT lock and an audible mislock error warning sounds. The hazard warning lights do not flash and the power-fold mirrors (if enabled) do not fold in. Check that all of the doors, the hood, and the luggage compartment are closed properly. Make sure the ignition is switched off and lock the vehicle again. If the mislock persists, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



1. With all of the doors closed, press the master lock switch to lock all of the doors and the luggage area.
2. Press the master unlock switch to unlock all of the doors and the luggage area.
3. Pull the door lever to unlock/release the door. Operating the door lever on either front door unlocks all of the doors.

### Note:

If the vehicle is locked with the Smart key, operating an interior door release lever unlocks only that door. If the door is opened, the alarm sounds.

### Note:

The rear door Child safety locks inhibit the rear door lock and unlock switches and the door release

## AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

The security system disarms automatically when the vehicle is unlocked with a smart key. However, if the vehicle is not opened within 40 seconds, the security system re-engages the locks and the alarm re-arms. This is a precautionary action to protect the vehicle when it is unintentionally unlocked.

## PASSIVE ARMING

When the passive arming feature is enabled, it automatically arms the perimeter (exterior) alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed. All of the other doors, the hood, and the luggage compartment must also be closed before passive arming enables. The ignition must also be switched off with no valid smart keys inside the vehicle.

Passive arming does not lock the vehicle, although access to the luggage compartment, via the interior or exterior release switches, is prevented.



Passive arming can be enabled or disabled by a retailer/authorized repairer.

## BATTERY BACK-UP SOUNDER

When the security system is armed, the battery back-up sounder activates if:

1. The vehicle's battery is disconnected.
2. An attempt is made to disconnect the alarm's siren.
3. An attempt is made to disconnect the battery back-up sounder.

## DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm activates, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

1. Press the unlock button on the smart key.
2. Open a door using passive entry.
3. Press the **START/STOP** button with a valid smart key positioned correctly. See [PUSH BUTTON START BACKUP](#).

The cause of the last alarm activation can be displayed in the message center. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

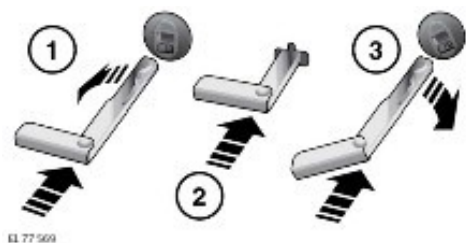
## EMERGENCY LOCKING

In the event of the battery discharging, or a fault occurring with the locking system, each of the doors must be locked manually.

The emergency key blade is required for this procedure. See [UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE](#).

Note:

Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.



Using the emergency key:

1. Open a door and locate the emergency lock access cover on the edge of the door. The cover has an embossed lock icon. Insert the emergency key blade into the cover's slot. Rotate the cover counter- clockwise to first release it, then pull to remove it from the door. Keep the lock access cover safe.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock. A firm push activates the door's locking mechanism.  
  
Remove the emergency key blade.
3. Refit the emergency lock access cover and rotate it clockwise to secure it firmly.
4. Close the door and check that it is locked. Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.

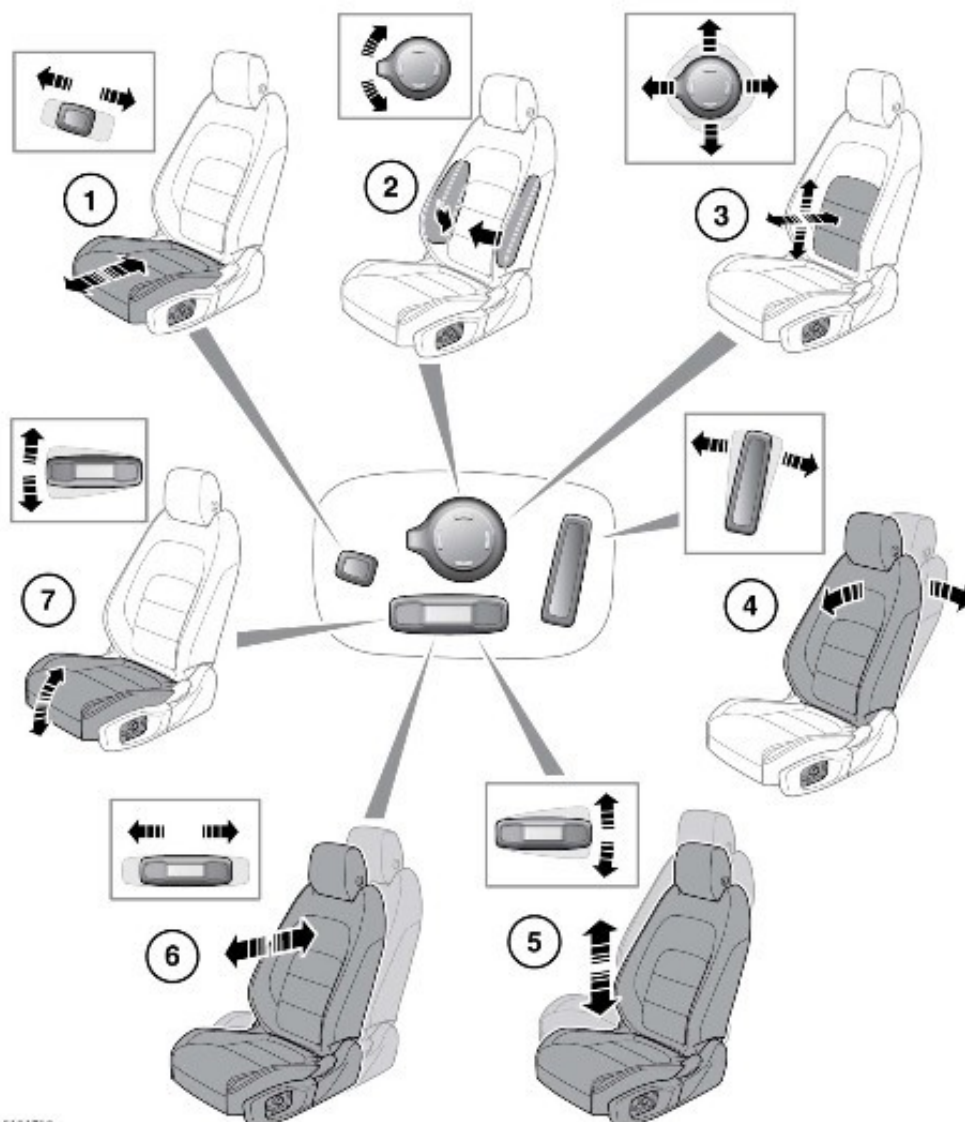
## SENSOR FAULTS

If a fault is detected with a security sensor, an error tone sounds from the alarm when the vehicle is unlocked. If this condition occurs, please visit a retailer/authorized repairer for rectification.

## ELECTRIC SEATS

Warning:

Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.



6181739

Note:

Seat functionality is dependent on the vehicle's specification.

Electric seat controls:

1. Cushion length adjustment.
2. Bolster adjustment (inflate or deflate).
3. Lumbar support adjustment.

Press the top of the button to raise.

Press the bottom of the button to lower.

Press the front of the button to inflate.

Press the rear of the button to deflate.

4. Seatback angle adjustment.



5. Height adjustment.
6. Forward and rearward adjustment.
7. Cushion front tilt adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition switched on.

If an obstruction is encountered while the seat is in motion, the seat will stop moving and further movement is restricted until reset.

To reset the seat:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where the movement was restricted.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

## SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

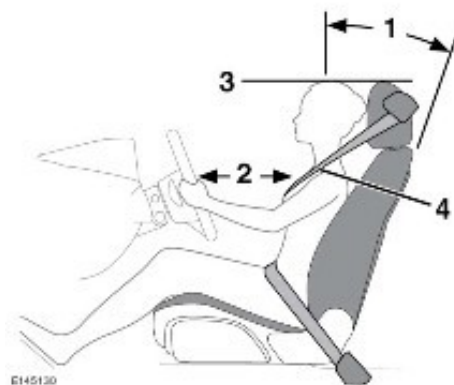
Warning:

Riding with a reclined seatback increases the chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of the restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against the hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt or the occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted, and with the seatbacks upright.

Warning:

Never adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is moving. Any sudden or unexpected movement of the seat could cause you to lose control of the vehicle, resulting in an accident.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt, and air bags, all contribute to the protection of the user. Correct use of these components gives you greater protection. Therefore, you should always observe the following points:



1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 10 inches (254 mm) is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel's air bag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position, with arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centerline of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it crosses the chest, midway between the neck and shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across the hips, not across the stomach.

Make sure that the driving position is comfortable and enables full control of the vehicle to be maintained.

**Warning:**

Do not sit or lean unnecessarily close to the air bag. An inflating air bag can cause serious injury or even death. Always fasten the seat belt properly and position the seat so that the occupant can sit as far back as possible from the air bag and still comfortably reach all of the controls.

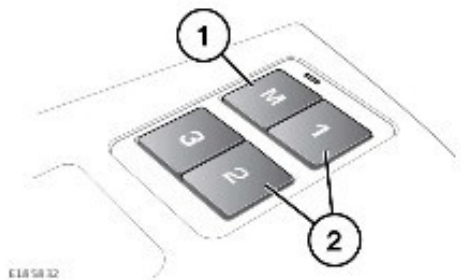
## DRIVING POSITION MEMORY

**Warning:**

Before activating the seat memory, make sure the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

The driver's seat, steering column, and door mirror positions can be saved to the vehicle's memory.

Once you have adjusted the power-operated driver's seat, steering column, and the door mirrors, memorize the settings as follows:



1. Press the memory set button (**M**) to activate the memory function. The LED indicator lamp will illuminate to confirm.
2. Press one of the three preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorize the current settings. A confirmation message is displayed in the message center, accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been memorized.

**Note:**

A seat position can only be memorized during the 5 second period.

Note:

Any existing settings are overwritten when a new position is saved to the memory.

Passenger seat memory:

To save the front passenger seat to memory: Adjust the power-operated passenger seat to the desired position, then follow the instructions for setting the driver's seat to memory.

## RECALLING A MEMORIZED POSITION

Warning:

Before activating the seat memory, make sure that the area immediately surrounding the seat is clear of obstructions and that all occupants are clear of moving parts.

Press the appropriate memory preset button. For the driver's settings, a confirmation message is displayed in the message center.

## REAR SEAT SAFETY

Warning:

Never allow passengers to travel in the luggage compartment under any circumstances.

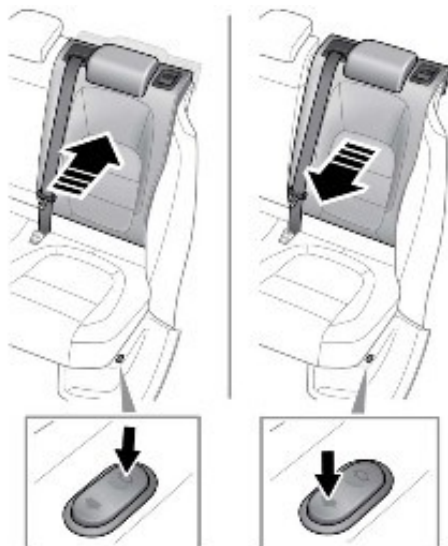
Warning:

All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly, and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

Warning:

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure that the belts are not damaged or exposed to sharp edges.

## ADJUSTING THE SEATBACK



Press the rear of the switch to recline the seatback.

Press the front of the switch to move the seatback to the upright position.

## FOLDING AND RAISING THE REAR SEATS

### Warning:

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured. Unsecured items can cause death or serious injury in the event of an impact or sudden maneuver.

### Warning:

Always take note of safety warnings and labels attached to the rear seats. The labels give advice on safely folding and raising the seats.

### Warning:

Before folding a rear seat, make sure that the seat is not occupied and that no person has any part of their body on the seat cushion. In particular, when one seat section is already folded, make sure that other occupants do not reach into the area of the seat being folded as there is a risk of entrapment and serious injury.

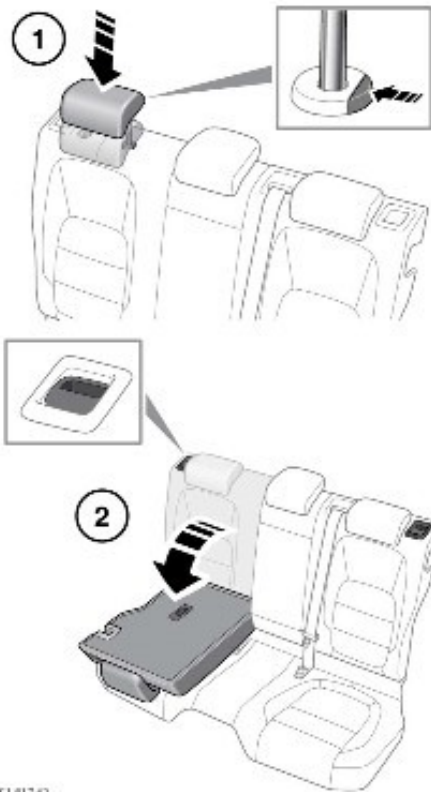
### Warning:

Beware of trapping fingers when raising and lowering the rear seats.

### Warning:

Before driving, make sure that the head restraints are fitted and correctly adjusted for each seat's occupant. See [REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS](#).

The split folding rear seats can be partially or completely folded.



E181742

To fold a rear seatback:

1. Fully lower the head restraint.
2. Pull the seatback release catch, then lower the seatback.

To raise a seatback: Raise the seatback until it locks into the fully raised position.

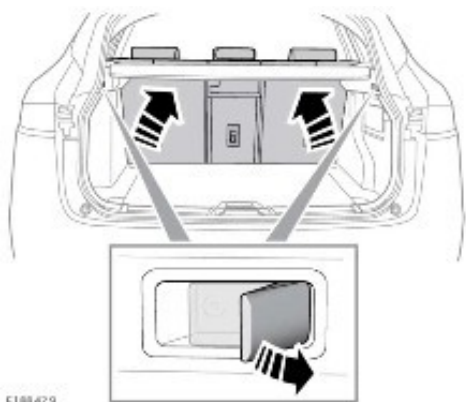
Warning:

Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the locking mechanism is fully engaged.

Caution:

Make sure that when the seatbacks are raised, the seat belts are routed correctly in front of the seatback and are not trapped by the seatbacks or the locking mechanism. Failure to do this may cause damage to the seat belt, which could result in a new seat belt being required.

The rear seatbacks can also be released from inside the luggage compartment.



To fold a rear seatback:

Pull a seatback release catch, these are located on both sides of the luggage compartment. When released the seatback automatically folds forwards.



The center seatback can be released separately. Press and hold the button to release, and then fold the center seatback forwards.

Note:

The second row center seatbelt incorporates a locking feature to prevent the seatbelt from being pulled in too far when the seatback is folded flat. To reset this feature after folding the seatback and then returning it to the upright position, extract the webbing until it stops, then return the webbing a small amount. The seatbelt will then operate as normal.

## FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Warning:

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

**Warning:**

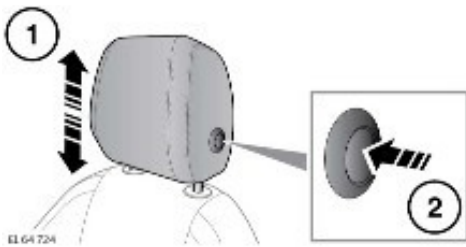
While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the seat occupant's head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

**Warning:**

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

**Warning:**

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

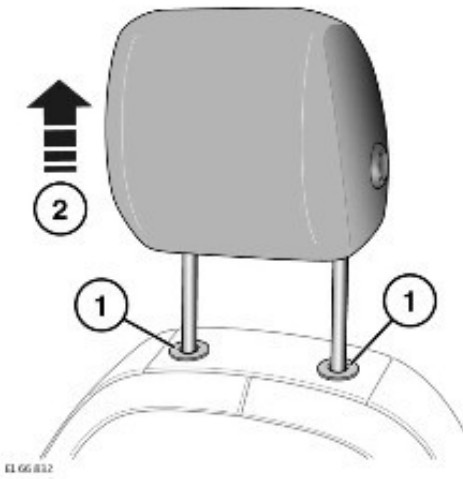


1. To raise: Pull the head restraint upwards until it clicks and locks into position.

**Note:**

Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the third adjustment position.

2. To lower: Press and hold the button on the side of the head restraint, then push down.



To remove the head restraint, raise the head restraint to its uppermost position.

1. Press and hold the seatback socket, on each side of the head restraint.
2. With the aid of a second person, lift the head restraint out of the

seatback. Warning:

Always store a removed head restraint securely, because unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle striking and injuring occupants.

To refit the head restraint:

Making sure that the head restraint is facing the correct direction. Insert the head restraint stems into the seatback sockets and push downwards until at least the first click.

Warning:

Adjust the head restraint to suit the seat occupant.

## REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

Warning:

Head restraints are designed to support the head, not the back of the neck. The head restraint must be positioned correctly to restrain rearward movement of the head in a collision or sudden stop.

Warning:

While stationary, adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is the same height as the top of the seat occupant's head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.

Warning:

Never adjust the head restraints while the vehicle is in motion.

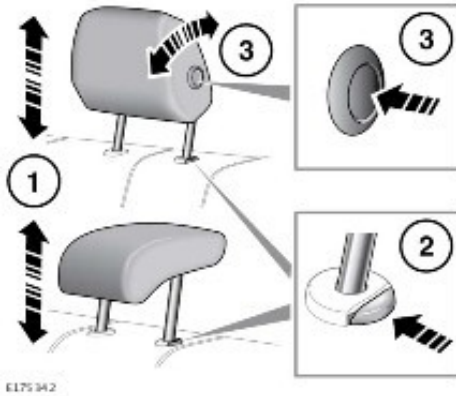


**Warning:**

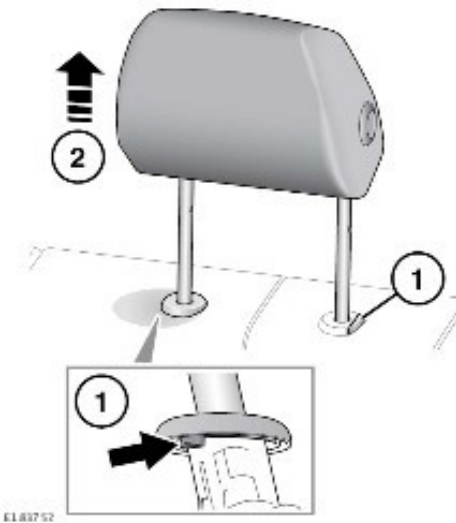
It is possible to swivel the head restraint forwards or backwards. For greater protection in the event of a collision, the head restraint should be adjusted, so that it is as close to the back of the seat occupant's head as is practical.

**Warning:**

Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.



1. To raise: Pull the head restraint upwards until it clicks and locks into position.
2. To lower: Press and hold the locking collar, then push down on the head restraint.
3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press and hold the button on the side of the restraint, then rotate to the desired position.



The rear head restraints can be removed if required (e.g., to fit larger child seats).

**Note:**

Two people are required for this operation.

To remove a head restraint:

1. With the head restraint in the fully raised position. Press the \*release tag below the stem collar, while at the same time pressing the button on the other stem collar.

\*To locate the release tag, press down on the seat material in the area shown on the illustration.

2. A second person is now required to lift out the head restraint.

Warning:

Always store a removed head restraint securely. Unsecured objects could be thrown inside the vehicle, striking and injuring occupants.

To refit the head restraint:

Making sure that the head restraint is facing the correct direction. Insert the head restraint stems into the seatback sockets, then push downwards until at least the first click.

Warning:

Adjust the head restraint to suit the seat occupant.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

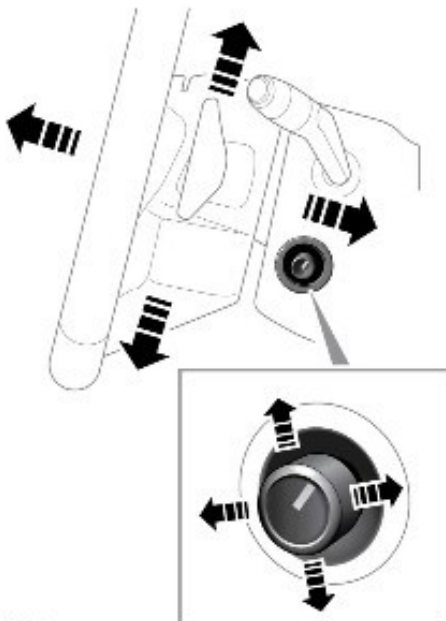
Warning:

Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause a loss of control, potentially resulting in an accident.

Warning:

Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices. Movement of the steering column, in Entry and Exit mode, could result in damage to the vehicle or possible injury to the occupant.

Electric steering column:



Vehicles with an electric steering column, can be adjusted to alter the tilt and reach of the steering wheel:

1. Move the control forwards or rearwards to adjust the reach of the steering wheel.
2. Move the control up or down to adjust the tilt of the steering wheel.

Note:

The electrically-operated steering column continues to move until the control is released, or until the steering column reaches either of its minimum or maximum positions.

Up to 3 steering wheel positions can be stored and recalled, along with the seat and exterior mirror positions, by the driving position memory. See [DRIVING POSITION MEMORY](#).

Manual steering column:



Vehicles with a manual steering column, can be adjusted to alter the tilt and reach of the steering wheel:

1. To unlock the steering column, rotate the control counter-clockwise until the endstop is reached.
2. Manually adjust the steering column to the desired reach/tilt position of the steering wheel.
3. To lock the steering column, rotate the control clockwise until the endstop is reached.

Note:

An audible click confirms locking of the steering column.

## ENTRY AND EXIT MODE



With the electric steering column control in the **AUTO** position, the steering column moves to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle.

On opening the driver's door, the system raises the steering column to the highest position, assisting with exit from the vehicle. When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the system returns the steering column to the previous position.

Note:

If the steering column is adjusted during entry or exit operation, automatic movement stops.

To prevent automatic movement of the steering column, turn the control clockwise to the alternative position.

Note:

If the steering column switch is moved away from **AUTO** when the steering column is in the exit position, the steering column moves back to its previous position when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

## ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

### HEATED STEERING WHEEL



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the switch. Press again to switch off.

### USING THE SEAT BELTS

Warning:

Do not use comfort clips or devices that would create slack in the seat belt system.

Warning:

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.

Warning:

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable. Wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Warning:

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Make sure that any belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce

slack. Warning:

Belts should not be worn with the straps

twisted. Warning:

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Warning:

Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and air bags) is greatly

reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly.

The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted and with the seatbacks upright.

Warning:

The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. Seat belts must always be worn.

Warning:

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Warning:

Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.



1. Putting on a seat belt: Draw the belt out smoothly, making sure that the seat and the occupant's position on the seat are correct.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of the shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

2. Fastening a seat belt: With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the nearest buckle. Press it in until a click is heard.

Pull up on the belt, to confirm the buckle is latched

correctly. To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note:

When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This prevents the belt from retracting too quickly.

## USING SEAT BELT USE DURING PREGNANCY

Warning:

Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.

Warning:

Never place anything between you and the seat belt, in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.



During pregnancy: Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

## SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

Warning:

The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

**Warning:**

After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a retailer/authorized repairer.

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide extra protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat or an outboard rear seat occupant.

**SEAT BELT SAFETY**

**Warning:**

A seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged. **Warning:**

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**Warning:**

If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a retailer/authorized repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.

**Warning:**

Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

**Warning:**

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the vehicle's seat belts. Doing so may render the seat belts as ineffective.

**Warning:**

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.

**Warning:**

When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.

**Warning:**

Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt. In an impact, the pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.

Each seat in the vehicle has a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat

occupant, aged older than 12 years, or with a body mass greater than 80 lb (36 kg). Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See [CHILD SEAT POSITIONING](#).

All the seat belts (except for the rear center seat belt) are equipped with a load limiter. This helps to regulate the over-tension of a seat belt in a severe impact, to help reduce the possibility of injury to the occupant.

## SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note:

If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing, and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

1. With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
2. With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
3. Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.

Warning:

If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your retailer/authorized repairer.

## SEAT BELT LOCKING MECHANISM

The rear seat belts and the front passenger seat belt have a locking mechanism which improves the retention of child seats.

The procedure to install a child seat is as follows:

1. Place the child seat in the vehicle, attach the seat belt and secure the buckle in accordance with the manufacturer's fitting instructions.
2. Pull on the shoulder section of the belt to unreel all of the remaining webbing to the limit of its travel. This engages the automatic locking feature which then acts as a ratchet, only allowing the webbing to retract.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract onto the child seat (a clicking sound confirms that the ratchet has engaged), while firmly pushing the child seat into the vehicle's seat.
4. Make sure there is no slack in the seat belt, by pulling upwards on the shoulder belt immediately above the child restraint.

When the child seat is removed and all of the seat belt webbing is allowed to retract, the seat belt



locking mechanism reverts to normal operation.

## SEAT BELT REMINDER

A front and rear seat belt reminder system warns the driver when the seat belt of an occupied seat is not fastened, or is unfastened during a trip.

Seat belt reminder starts when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's belt is unbuckled. Dependent on the market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the instrument panel illuminates (see [SEAT BELT \(RED\)](#)). The visual and audible warnings applicable to the seat belt reminder feature are market dependent to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change depending on whether the vehicle is stationary, or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the seat belt reminder feature also applies to the passenger seat.

A graphic in the message center also indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a trip and also when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a trip.



Each seating position is represented by a **passenger** icon, the color and symbol of which indicates the seat belt status:

1. Green: The seat belt, in the indicated position, is fastened.
2. Red: The seat belt, in the indicated position, has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is switched on. The indicator turns grey after 30 seconds.
3. Gray: Indicates that the seat belt is not fastened.

Note:

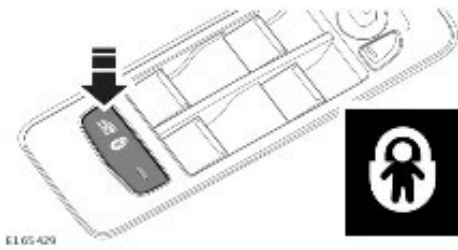
The indicators are displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, or a door is opened and then closed.

In addition, an audible warning sounds if the driver's, or any occupied passenger's seat belt is not fastened, or is unfastened during a trip.

Note:

If a heavy object is placed on a passenger seat, it may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that the object be placed in the luggage compartment or secured using the seat belt.

## CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

Press the button on the driver's door, to activate the child door locks and inhibit the rear windows. The button's LED indicator lamp illuminates when active and a confirmation message is displayed in the message center.

To deactivate, press the button again. The LED lamp extinguishes and a confirmation message is displayed in the message center.

## CHILD SEATS

### Warning:

According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats than in the front seat. The air bags alone will not prevent children from being seriously injured or killed. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. Children under 13 years of age, should always ride in the rear.

### Warning:

Make sure the child seat fits your child properly. Always check the seat manufacturer's instructions and labels for height and weight limits. For more specific guidance, consult your pediatrician.

There are three general types of child restraint systems: Infant seats, toddler seats, and belt-positioning booster seats.

Infants: Birth to at least 1 year of age and at least 20 lbs (9 kg).

Toddlers: until about age 4 and about 40 lbs (18 kg).

Boosters: belt-positioning booster until about age 12 or at least 4 ft 9 inches (145 cm) and seat belt fits properly.

### Warning:

Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.

### Warning:

Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by use of the lap belts or the lap

belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat appropriate to their age and size.

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national or state legislation permits this), Jaguar recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
2. Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
3. Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
4. Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.

Warning:

Extreme hazard! Never place a rearward facing child restraint on the front passenger seat.

The infant could be seriously injured or killed if the air bag deploys.



E132267

The above symbol, affixed to the end of the facia on the passenger side, it warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger air bag is fitted and operational.



E156334

The above label, affixed to the passenger side sun visor, it warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger air bag is fitted and operational.



The above label, affixed to the front door B pillar on the passenger side, warns against a child sitting too close to the front seat side airbag.

Warning:

Never let a child's head rest near to a front seat side airbag, an inflating airbag can cause serious or fatal injury.

## CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

Warning:

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.

Warning:

Seat belts (or suitable child restraints) should be used by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Warning:

Even with Advanced Air Bags, children can be killed or seriously injured. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. Children under the age of 13 should always ride in the back seat.

When using a seat belt to secure a (non-LATCH) rearward-facing/convertible/forward-facing type of child seat, make sure the seat belt's locking mechanism is used. See [SEAT BELT LOCKING MECHANISM](#). Also see [CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST](#).

Note:

The information contained in the following table may not be applicable in all states/countries. You are responsible for conforming to the relevant laws.

PROPER CHILD SAFETY SEAT USE CHART Buckle everyone. Children under the age of 13 ride in the back.			
	INFANTS	TODDLER	YOUNG CHILDREN
WEIGHT	Birth to 1 year and at least 20 lb (9 kg).	Over 1 year and over 20 to 40 lb. (9 to 18 kg).	Ages 4 to 12, unless 4 ft 9 in. (145 cm). Over 40 lb. (18 kg).
TYPE of SEAT	Infant only or rear-facing, convertible.	Rearward-facing/ Convertible/ Forward-facing.	Belt positioning booster seat.
SEAT POSITION	See note below1.	See note below1.	See note below1.
ALWAYS MAKE SURE	Children to 1 year and at least 20 lb. (9 kg) in rear-facing seats. Harnessstraps at, or below, shoulder level.	Harness straps should be at or above shoulders. Most seats require top slot for forward-facing.	Belt positioning booster seats must be used with both the lap and shoulder belt. Make sure the lap belt fits low and tight across the lap and upper thigh area and the shoulder belt fits snug, crossing the chest and shoulder to avoid abdominal injuries.
WARNING	All children under the age of 13 should ride in the back seat.		
1 Your child should remain in a rearward-facing child seat, until he or she reaches the top height, or weight limit, allowed by your child seat's manufacturer. Once your child outgrows the rearward-facing child seat, your child is ready to travel in a forward-facing child seat with a harness.			

When installing a child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards to install any rearward-facing child seat.

Vehicles fitted with adjustable 2nd row seats: Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.

Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants will be reduced by the installation of any rearward-facing child seat.

If a head restraint has been removed to fit a child seat, make sure the head restraint is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger. See [REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS](#).

## CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

Non-LATCH child restraints:

1. Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
2. Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
3. Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
4. Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing and do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.

5. Regularly check the fit of a child seat and replace seats or harnesses that show signs of wear.
6. Make sure that you have removed all slack from the adult seat belt.
7. No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage a child not to play with the buckle or harness.
8. Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
9. Activate the rear door child safety locks. See [CHILD SAFETY LOCKS](#).
10. Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.

#### LATCH child restraints:

1. Always attach the top tether when fitting the LATCH seat.
2. Carefully follow the instructions supplied with the child seat. Always give the LATCH seat a final pull, to make sure that the lower anchors are secure.
3. Always use the appropriate child restraints and adjust the harnesses for every child, every trip.
4. Make sure that a child falls into the correct weight range for the seat.
5. Avoid dressing a child in bulky clothing and do not place any objects between the child and the restraint system.
6. Regularly check the fit of a child seat and replace seats and harnesses that show signs of wear.
7. No child seat is completely child-proof. Encourage children not to play with the buckle or harness.
8. Never leave a child unsupervised in the vehicle.
9. Activate the rear door child safety locks. See [CHILD SAFETY LOCKS](#).
10. Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.

#### BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3-point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use. Adjust the seat belt to suit.

#### INSTALLING LATCH CHILD RESTRAINTS

##### Warning:

Do not attempt to fit a LATCH child restraint to the center rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold a LATCH child restraint in this position. Install only using seat belts (non-LATCH system) and the top tether at this position.

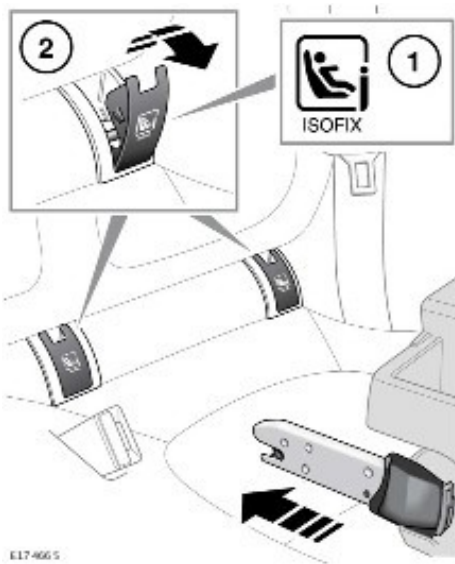
**Warning:**

If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

**Warning:**

**WARNING:** child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

LATCH anchorage child restraints can be fitted only to the outer seat positions on the second row seats.



To install a LATCH child seat:

1. This symbol is shown, on the removable access cover, to indicate the position of the LATCH lower anchorages.
2. Locate the recess at the top of each access cover, lightly pull forward to release and remove. This now allows access to the vehicle's lower anchor bars.

Note:

Store the access covers safely and refit when the child restraint is removed from the vehicle.

3. Slide the child restraint locking mechanism onto the vehicle's anchor bars and then push the child restraint towards the rear of the vehicle, making sure it engages completely.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should always check the anchor points visually to make sure they are correctly attached.

Note:

Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

## INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

Warning:

Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps. Warning:

When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint.

Warning:

If a child seat or restraint system is to be fitted to the center seating position, the center armrest must be in the stowed position (folded into the seat). It is impossible to secure the child seat or restraint system correctly with the armrest in place, which reduces the effectiveness of the restraint in the event of an accident.

Your vehicle is equipped with tether strap anchorage points behind the second row seat frames. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or restraint systems.





### Installing the child restraint:

Install the child restraint securely in one of the rear seating positions.

1. Pass the tether strap over the seatback, beneath the head restraint, and between the seatback and the loadspace cover.
2. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor point on the back of the seat. Make sure the tether strap hook is facing towards the back of the seat.
3. Tighten the tether strap according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

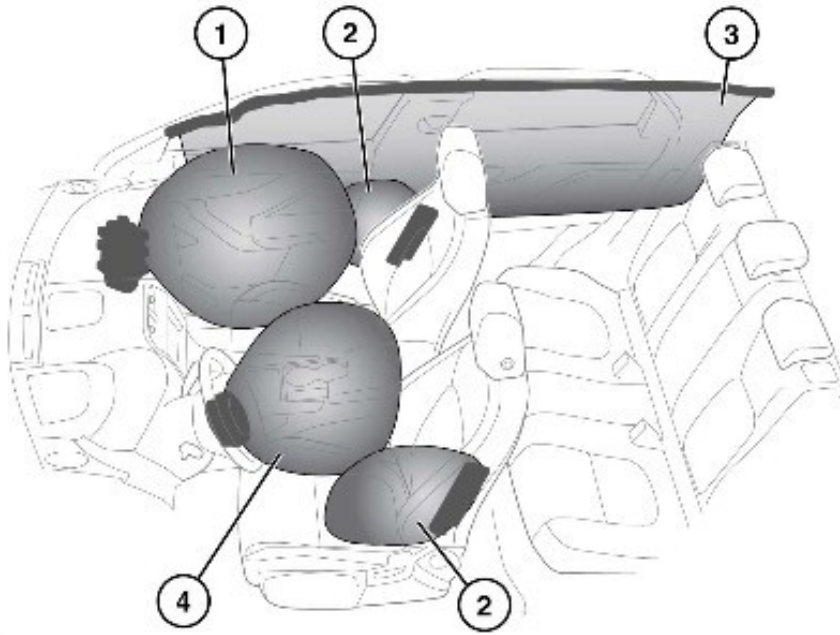
### AIR BAGS

#### Warning:

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, road and weather conditions, and do not exceed any speed limits in force.

#### Warning:

Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.



EL1455

#### Airbag locations:

1. Front passenger's air bag.
2. Seat mounted side air bags.
3. Curtain air bag.
4. Driver's air bag.

#### Note:

The general location of air bags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the words **AIR BAG**.

Always contact your retailer/authorized repairer if:

1. An air bag inflates.
2. The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
3. Any part of the air bag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including trim covering air bags.
4. The amber air bag warning lamp illuminates.

## AIR BAG OPERATION

### Warning:

For the air bags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect installation should be referred to your retailer/authorized repairer, as soon as possible, for examination and repair.

### Warning:

Air bags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. To minimize the risk of injury, make sure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.

### Warning:

Air bag inflation takes place instantaneously and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

### Warning:

High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death irrespective of the safety features fitted to a vehicle.

### Warning:

The air bag SRS cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of 10 in (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver's air bag module.

Air bags provide extra protection in certain types of collision only - they do not replace the need to wear a seat belt. All occupants, in all seating positions, should always wear their seat belt, whether or not an air bag is present in that seating position.

Air bag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.) vary considerably and affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The air bags and Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) are not designed to operate as a result of:

1. Rear impacts.
2. Minor front impacts.
3. Minor side impacts.
4. Heavy braking.
5. Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing

the air bags to deploy.

Note:

If, as a result of an impact, you believe the air bags should have deployed and they failed to do so, please call 1 (800) 452-4827 for advice, or arrange for a Jaguar representative to inspect the vehicle.

## AIR BAG OBSTRUCTION

Warning:

Do not obstruct the operation of the air bags by placing any part of your person or any objects in contact with, or close to, an air bag module. If the air bag inflates, objects or any part of your person could interfere with the inflation of the air bag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Warning:

Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the air bags by placing feet, knees or any other part of the body, or any other objects in contact with, or in close proximity to, an air bag module.

Do not place objects between the air bag module and the seat occupant.

If the air bag inflates, objects or any part of their person could interfere with the inflation of the air bag, or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Warning:

Do not use non-approved seat covers or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with air bags. If in doubt, consult your retailer/authorized repairer.

Warning:

Make sure a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain and seat-mounted side air bags.

Warning:

Do not attach or position items on, or close to the roof lining, front seatbacks, or to an air bag cover, which could interfere with the inflation of the air bag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.

Note:

Unauthorized modification of the vehicle or parts may invalidate the vehicle's warranty. Air bags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

1. Any part of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an air bag cover.
2. Objects placed on, or close to, an air bag cover.
3. Clothing, sun screens, or other material hanging from grab handles.
4. Clothing, cushions, or other material covering seat-mounted air bags.

5. Seat covers which are not approved, or specifically designed for use with seat-mounted air bags.

This list is not exhaustive and it remains the responsibility of the driver and passenger/s to make sure the air bags are not obstructed in any way.

## FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver air bags are able to deploy in two stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the air bags inflate fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the air bags are partially inflated.

## SIDE AIR BAGS

The side air bags are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

## CURTAIN AIR BAGS

Warning:

For the curtain air bags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and A pillar trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a retailer/authorized repairer for examination.

The curtain air bags are deployed in side impact and rollover events, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.

Note:

Curtain air bags do not inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts alone.

## AIR BAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS

Warning:

When an air bag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. This powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.

Warning:

Air bag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.

Warning:

After inflation, some air bag components will be very hot. Do not touch the air bag components until they have cooled sufficiently.

Warning:

After inflation, the front and seat-mounted side air bags deflate immediately. This provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

## **Related information**

### **AIR BAG WARNING LAMP**

Warning:

Even with advanced air bags, children can be seriously injured or killed. Never place a child in any type of child restraint or booster seat in the front passenger seat. Children under the age of 13 should always ride in the back seat.

Warning:

The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle's restraint system, which could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.

Warning:

If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

The air bag warning lamp is displayed in the Instrument panel and illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See [AIR BAG \(AMBER\)](#).

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your retailer/authorized repairer immediately:

1. The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
2. The warning lamp (following the bulb check) fails to extinguish within 8 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
3. The warning lamp illuminates at any time other than the bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) being monitored include:

1. SRS warning indicator.
2. Rotary coupler.
3. Air bag modules.
4. Seat belt pre-tensioners (front and outboard rear seat belts).
5. Front seat buckle switches.

6. Front seat track position sensor.
7. Air bag diagnostic control unit.
8. Crash and rollover sensors.
9. Air bag wiring harness.
10. Seat occupancy sensor.
11. Front passenger belt tension sensor.
12. Air bag status indicator.

## OCCUPANT SENSING

### Warning:

Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child restraint system appropriate for their age and weight, and secured in a rear seating position.

### Warning:

Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an air bag in front of it!

### Warning:

For optimum safety, children under the age of 13 should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. An inflating air bag could cause serious injury or death to children riding in the front passenger seat.

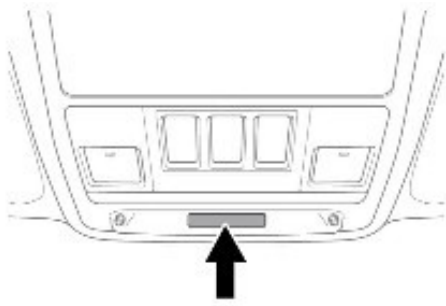
### Warning:

When checking the operational status of the front passenger air bag, make sure that the ignition is switched on.

The front passenger seat is fitted with an occupancy sensor system that determines if the seat is unoccupied, occupied by a person of low weight, a child seat or object, or is occupied by a heavier person or object.

The system consists of:

1. A weight sensing pressure pad installed under the front passenger seat cushion. The sensor measures downward pressure/weight on the seat cushion.
2. A seat belt tension sensor, integrated into the anchor point of the front passenger seat belt.
3. A control unit installed under the front passenger seat.
4. An air bag status indicator lamp, mounted on the overhead control panel (as illustrated) displays the operational status of the passenger air bag.



E165485

There are three operational states::

Occupancy status	Passenger air bag status	Status indicator display
Completely empty.	Deactivated	PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF *
Child restraint or low weight occupant or object.	Deactivated	PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF
Heavy occupant or object.	Activated	ON PASSENGER AIR BAG **

\* If the status lamp indicates that the air bag is off with a seated adult, contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.

\*\* Displays for 60 seconds followed by no display.

## AIR BAG SERVICE INFORMATION

### Warning:

Phone systems should be installed only by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with a Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). If you are in any doubt, seek advice from a retailer/authorized repairer.

### Warning:

Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.

### Warning:

Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger or render the system inoperative, either of which may result in serious injury or death.

For your safety, all of the following operations should only be carried out by a Jaguar retailer/authorized repairer or suitably qualified person:

- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.



- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Always contact a retailer/authorized repairer if:

1. An air bag inflates.
2. The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
3. Any part of the air bag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the air bags.

## DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Warning:

Occupants, with disabilities that may require the vehicle to be modified, must contact a Jaguar retailer/authorized repairer before any modifications are made. Failure to do so could result in the vehicle being rendered unsafe, potentially leading to personal injury. Modifications may adversely affect the vehicle which can lead to a loss of control, resulting in a crash.

(USA only) If you are considering modifying your vehicle in any way to accommodate a disability, for example, by altering or adapting the driver's or passenger's seat(s) or air bag system, please contact:

Jaguar Land Rover North America

LLC Customer Relationship Center

555 MacArthur

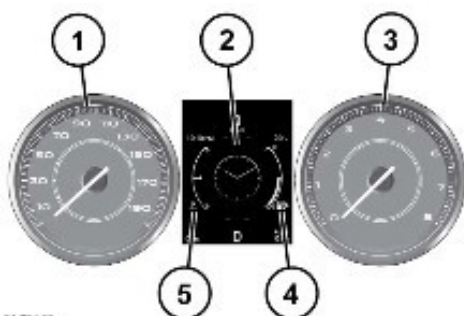
Blvd Mahwah

New Jersey 07430-2327

1-800-452-4827, option #9.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL

One of two types of Instrument panel will be fitted to your vehicle. One type features traditional dials either side of a central screen, the other features a full screen, which incorporates both dials. The layout of both Instrument panels is similar.



1. Speedometer.
2. Message center and menu.

Note:

The display in this area of the Instrument panel can be changed to suit your personal preferences. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

3. Tachometer.
4. Fuel gauge.

Caution:

Never allow the engine to run out of fuel, or damage to the engine may occur.

If the amber low fuel warning lamp illuminates, the vehicle should be refueled as soon as possible. The approximate distance that can be traveled on the remaining fuel can be viewed via the Trip computer range function.

As a reminder for the location of the fuel filler, there is an arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, pointing to the relevant side of the vehicle.

5. Temperature gauge.

Caution:

Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

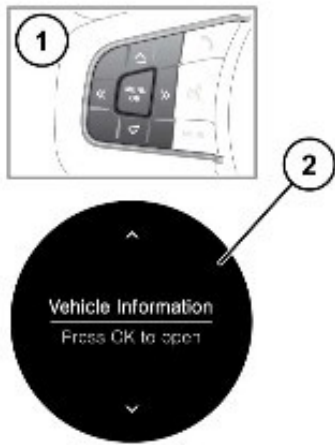
If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Note:

If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the Air Conditioning (A/C) may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.

## INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

A number of vehicle features and display settings can be configured via the Instrument panel menu.



EL75412

### Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

To display and navigate through the Instrument panel menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control: Press **MENU** to activate the menu, then use as

follows: Press the up/down arrows to scroll through a list.

Press and release the right arrow, or press **OK**, to view a sub-list. Press and release the left arrow to return to the previous menu.

Press and hold the left arrow to close the menu.

Press the **OK** button to select the highlighted menu item.

2. Scroll through the menu options as required.

Depending on the Instrument panel fitted to your vehicle. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL](#). The menu options will be as follows:

1. **Recents** (full screen Instrument panels

only). Note:

This menu item is only displayed when a phone is connected.

2. **Favourites** or **Queue** (full screen Instrument panels

only). Note:

This menu item is dependent on the media source selected.

3. **Source** (full screen Instrument panels only).

4. **Driver Assistance.**

5. **Trip Computer.**

6. **Display Settings.**

7. **Head-Up Display (HUD).**

8. **Vehicle**

**Settings.**

Warning:

Before making any changes to the **Vehicle Settings**, you must make sure that you have read and fully understood the relevant topics/sections of the Owner's Handbook. Failure to do so could lead to serious injury or death.

9. **Vehicle**

**Information.** Note:

Only available before the engine starts.

Warning:

Do not ignore warning messages. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.

If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning lamp remains illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds, in order of priority. Note:

Messages are displayed in order of importance. High importance warning messages are given the highest priority.

Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control.

## TRIP COMPUTER

The trip computer's memory stores data for a trip, or a series of trips, until it is reset to zero.

There are three trip memories available: **Trip A**, **Trip B** and **Trip Auto**. Use the instrument panel menu to select a trip memory to display in the instrument panel.

## USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



The trip computer is able to display various pieces of information to the driver. A short press (1 second or less) of the trip button (arrowed) displays the trip computer menu in the instrument panel message center. The options available are:

1. **Trip content**: Select the information type to be displayed in the message center.
2. **Trip bank**: Select **Trip A**, **Trip B**, or **Trip Auto**.
3. **Trip Auto button**: Manage the trip selection.
4. **Trip units**: Select metric or imperial units.

The distance, average speed, and average fuel economy values for **Trip A** and **Trip B** can be reset to zero. To do this, press and hold the trip button until the message **resetting trip** is displayed in the message center.

It is not possible to manually reset the **Trip Auto** feature. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, to record a continuous journey, or removed. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second, when **Trip Auto** values for distance, average speed, and average fuel economy are displayed. **Adding last journey** or **Removing last journey** appears in the message center. Press the trip button for longer than 1 second to select the desired option. The previous trip information is added to, or removed from, the current trip and the new total is displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

## TRIP DISTANCE

Distance traveled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9 999.9 (miles or km). The trip computer automatically resets to zero if this distance is exceeded.

## RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (miles or km) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining

available fuel, assuming fuel consumption and driving style remain constant.

## IMPERIAL/METRIC/MIXED DISPLAY

The trip computer readings can be changed between imperial, metric, and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the message center. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

The temperature display can be changed between °F (Fahrenheit) and °C (Celsius) independently of imperial or metric units.

## SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

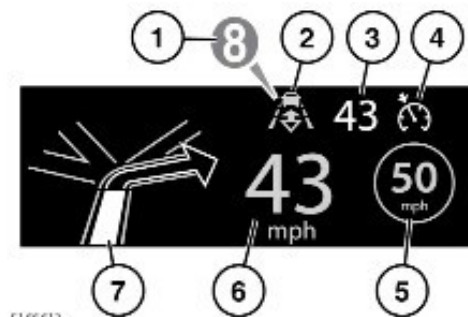
An upcoming service interval is notified to the driver via the message center, as either a distance or time left until the service is due. Once the distance or time are exceeded, the display shows a negative (-) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

One or both types of service interval (distance and time) may be displayed.

Details of the next service can be found in the **Vehicle Information** instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

## HEAD-UP DISPLAY (HUD)

The Head-Up Display (HUD) feature projects driver information onto the inside of the windshield.



Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

The information displayed is, as follows:

1. Current gear selected, or,
2. Follow mode is active. See [ENTERING FOLLOW MODE](#).
3. Cruise control set speed.
4. Cruise control or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active.
5. Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR), identified speed limit. See [TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION](#).
6. Current vehicle speed.

## 7. Turn-by-turn navigation instructions.

The HUD can be controlled from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** option in the Instrument panel menu. For more information, see [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Once selected, the menu offers a number of options, including:

1. Switching the HUD on/off.
2. Selecting which information is displayed on the inside of the windshield.
3. The position of the display.
4. The brightness of the display.

It is important that the position of the display is set correctly. The correct position is dependent on a number of conditions, including the height of the driver and the seat position.

Note:

Before setting the position of the HUD, make sure that the driver's seat is correctly positioned. The HUD level should be set horizontally, within the driver's vision. See [SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION](#).

To set the display position, select **HUD Position** from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** menu and follow the on-screen instructions. Use the driver's seat memory store button (**M**) to store your preferences. See [DRIVING POSITION MEMORY](#).

The brightness of the display is set automatically to suit the ambient light conditions. Brightness can be manually adjusted to your preferred level, by selecting **HUD Brightness** from the **Head-Up Display (HUD)** menu. Follow the on-screen instructions and then press **OK** to confirm.

The HUD is linked to the Trip computer units settings. If the fuel economy display is set to mpg, the HUD is in miles. If it is set to km/l, the HUD is in kilometers. See [IMPERIAL/METRIC/MIXED DISPLAY](#).

Note:

In extreme temperatures, the HUD takes a longer time to display from start-up. This is to make sure that the HUD always runs at its optimum temperature.

Note:

It may not be possible to see the full HUD image, while wearing polarized sunglasses. Note:

Do not place anything over the HUD unit, which is positioned above the Instrument panel, next to the windshield.

If cleaning is required, follow the cleaning instructions. See [CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS](#)

## WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

### Warning:

Do not ignore warning lamps or indicators. Take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury, or serious damage to the vehicle.

Red warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance, before continuing.

Amber and yellow warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

Green and blue lamps within the instrument panel indicate a system's status.

### LAMP CHECK

A bulb check is initiated for some warning lamps when the ignition is switched on. The check lasts for 3 seconds (except for the air bag warning lamp, which remains on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the message center. Note:

Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g., high beam headlights and turn signals). Note:

If a trailer with LED lights is connected to the trailer socket, the bulb check may not be performed.

### BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



The battery charge warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on. It extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system and a message is displayed in the message center. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

### BRAKE (RED)

#### Warning:

Do not drive if the message **LOW BRAKE FLUID** is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top-up as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing. Driving with low brake fluid can cause increased braking distance or brake failure and can result in a collision





USA.



Canada.

The brake warning lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the braking system.

Stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits, and check and top up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

#### CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



The critical warning message lamp illuminates when a relevant message is available in the message center.

#### DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (RED)



The lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is seriously low, incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or there is a fault with the system. The lamp is accompanied by messages in the message center. Follow the on screen messages, if safe to do so. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

#### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (RED)



The lamp illuminates when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is full, or there is a fault with the DPF system. Depending on severity, the lamp may be accompanied by a chime and a message in the message center. Seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity.

#### ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB) (RED)



USA.



Canada.

The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) warning lamp illuminates if the EPB is correctly applied. If the

lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

#### ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



The engine temperature warning lamp illuminates when the engine's temperature is too high. The message centre also displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

#### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (RED)



The lane departure warning lamp illuminates if the vehicle crosses a lane marking, without the appropriate turn signal being operated. Illumination of the lamp is accompanied by a vibration felt through the steering wheel.

#### LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the low oil pressure warning lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle, as soon as safety permits. Switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine. If the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

#### SEAT BELT (RED)



The seat belt warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied seat belt is unbuckled.

The lamp extinguishes when the relevant seat belt is

buckled. Note:

Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See [USING THE SEAT BELTS](#).

#### AIR BAG (AMBER)



The air bag warning lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and

extinguishes after 6seconds.

If the lamp illuminates again, after the bulb check or when driving, there is a fault with the air bag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

## ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)

Warning:

If the ABS and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified as the brake system may not be functioning correctly. This may, in turn, lead to loss of control causing an accident. Seek qualified assistance immediately.

Warning:

It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.



Illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application, and seek qualified assistance urgently.

## AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (ASL) (AMBER)



The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) lamp illuminates when the ASL feature is active.

## BRAKE (AMBER)



USA.



Canada.

The brake lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the braking system. The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

## DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF) (AMBER)



The lamp illuminates to warn the driver that the level of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is starting to run low, incorrect fluid has been added to the system, or there is a fault with the system. The lamp is accompanied by messages in the message center. Follow the on screen messages, if safe to do so.

#### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (AMBER)



The lamp illuminates when the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) has failed to regenerate, and is starting to become full. The lamp is accompanied by a message in the message center. Follow the on screen messages, if safe to do so.

#### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) lamp flashes when the system is active. If there is a fault with the system, it remains illuminated and the message center displays **DSC NOT AVAILABLE**.

The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

#### DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off lamp illuminates when the system is switched off. The lamp is accompanied by a chime, and a confirmation message in the message centre.

#### ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



The engine/transmission lamp illuminates briefly, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission.

The vehicle can be driven, but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

#### EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



The external temperature lamp illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

#### FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



The follow mode lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

#### GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



The general warning/information message lamp illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the message center.

#### GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



The lamp illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the diesel engine glow plugs are active.

#### INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER (ISL) (AMBER)



The Intelligent Speed Limiter (ISL) lamp illuminates when the ISL feature is active.

#### LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



The lamp illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity. The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

#### PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates to confirm that the progress control system is enabled.

#### REAR FOG LIGHTS (AMBER)



The lamp illuminates when the rear fog lights are switched on.

#### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS) (YELLOW)



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) lamp illuminates to warn that one or more tires are significantly under-inflated. The lamp is accompanied by a message in the message center,

Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, when safe to do so. Check the tire pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp flashes to indicate a system fault.

#### AUTO HIGH BEAM ASSIST (AHBA) (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when the Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) feature has switched on the high beam headlights

#### CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when cruise control or adaptive cruise control is active.

#### FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when forward alert is active.

#### FRONT FOG LIGHTS (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when the front fog lights are switched on.

#### GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)



The gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (up-shift).

The gear shift indicator does not illuminate while cruise control is active and is not being overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Warning:

This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

#### AUTO STOP/START (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when the engine is shut down by the auto stop/start system. Note:

Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown enabled by the auto stop/start system.

#### DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF) (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates briefly when a successful Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration process has been carried out.

#### LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates gray to confirm the lane departure warning system is enabled. Recognized lane markings illuminate green, otherwise they illuminate gray.

#### SIDE LIGHTS (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates when the side lights are switched on.

#### TRAILER TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The lamp illuminates, as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when

the engine is started.

If a trailer is attached, the warning lamp will flash in conjunction with the turn signal warning lamp. If the lamp fails to flash, the turn signal indicator bulb on the trailer may be faulty.

Note:

If the attached and connected trailer is fitted with LED lights, the bulb check may not be performed.

## TURN SIGNALS (GREEN)



The appropriate warning lamp flashes when the column control is moved up or down to signal a turn.

If a turn signal bulb fails, the audible ticking and warning lamp sounds and flashes at twice the normal rate, when that turn signal is selected.

## HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



The lamp illuminates when the high beam headlights are switched on or flashed.

## FOLLOW MODE OFF (GRAY)



The lamp illuminates when the adaptive cruise control system is disabled.

## LIGHTING CONTROL



Lighting control operation:



1. With the headlights on, push the lighting control away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See [HIGH BEAM \(BLUE\)](#).

Note:

Do not use high beam where it may distract other road users.

2. Pull the lighting control towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam remains on for as long as the lighting control is held.
3. Side lights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the side lights on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See [SIDE LIGHTS \(GREEN\)](#).
4. Headlights: Rotate the lighting control to this position to switch the headlights on.
5. **AUTO**: With auto lights selected, and the ignition switched on. When the ambient light fades, the side lights, rear lights, dipped beam headlights, and license plate lights switch on automatically. Headlight courtesy delay, Auto High Beam Assist (AHBA) and the windshield wipers detection may also be activated.

Note:

Low exterior light levels, caused by adverse weather conditions, may also cause the auto lights to activate.

6. Front fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar away from the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See [FRONT FOG LIGHTS \(GREEN\)](#).

To switch off the front fog lights: Turn the collar away from the steering wheel again and release.

7. Rear fog lights: Operate only while the side lights, headlights, or auto lights are selected. Turn the collar towards the steering wheel and release to switch on. The instrument panel warning lamp illuminates. See [REAR FOG LIGHTS \(AMBER\)](#).

To switch off the rear fog lights: Turn the collar towards the steering wheel again and release.

In the event of a bulb failure, please note that some bulbs are replaceable only by a retailer/authorized repairer. See [CHANGING A BULB](#).

## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

With the lighting control in the **OFF** position or in the **AUTO** position, while the lighting conditions do not require the headlamps to be on, then the Daytime running lamps switch on automatically under the following conditions:

1. The engine is running.
2. The gear selector is out of Park (**P**) (automatic transmission).
3. The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied - market dependent.



Unless required or prohibited by law, the Daytime running lamps feature can be disabled or enabled by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## HEADLAMP COURTESY DELAY

This feature operates whenever the lighting control is in the **AUTO (5)** position and the ignition is switched off. The headlamps remain illuminated for up to 240 seconds.

Note:

The time delay may be changed via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Courtesy lamps can be switched off, at any time, by pressing the headlamps button on the Smart key.

## AUTO HIGH BEAM

This feature automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

For Auto High Beam (AHB) to become operational, the lighting control must be in the **AUTO (5)** position, with low beam headlamps selected.

The Instrument panel warning lamp illuminates when AHB is selected. See [AUTO HIGH BEAM \(AHB\) \(GREEN\)](#).

AHB only activates when the vehicle's speed exceeds 25 mph (40 km/h). The system deactivates when the vehicle's speed drops below 15 mph (24 km/h).

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position as normal. To return to AHB, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to low beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position (**2**) and AHB is canceled. To return to AHB, push the lighting control to the high beam position (**1**) and then return it to the central position.

To switch AHB off, turn the lighting control from **AUTO** to headlamps.

This feature can be disabled/enabled via the **Vehicle Settings** and **Auto High Beam** Instrument panel menus. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

The following may affect the operation of AHB:

1. Highly reflective road signs.
2. Dimly lit road users, for example, cyclists or pedestrians.
3. Adverse weather conditions, for example, rain or fog.

4. Dirty or obscured sensor.
5. Dirty, damaged or fogged windshield.
6. Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central highway barrier.
7. An icy or frosted windshield.

Note:

Make sure to defrost the windshield during winter conditions.

Note:

The system cannot be relied upon to activate or deactivate high beam in all possible circumstances. It remains the driver's responsibility to use the headlamps correctly at all times.

Note:

Make sure that the forward-facing sensors on the back of the rear-view mirror are not blocked or obstructed.

## WINDSHIELD WIPER DETECTION

If Auto lamps is selected and the windshield wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more, the side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps switch on automatically. When the wipers are switched off, the lamps automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

## HEADLIGHTS - CONDENSATION

Misting of light lenses can occur under some atmospheric conditions. This does not affect the performance of the lights and clears during normal operation.

## HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

The headlamp beam pattern is suitable for driving on either side of the road. There is no need for any mechanical adjustment or external decals.

## HEADLAMP LEVELING



E16-9007

Use the rotary control to set the Halogen headlamps position to the correct level for the current vehicle load. This is located on the driver's side lower fascia.

Note:

Not available for all markets.

Vehicle load	Switch position
Driver only	0
Driver and front seat passenger	1
Driver and passengers in all seats	2
Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)	3
Maximum rear axle load	3

## HEADLIGHT LEVELING - LED AND XENON

LED and Xenon headlights fitted with automatic leveling do not require manual adjustment. The vehicle does not have a rotary control on the facia panel.

## BEND LIGHTING

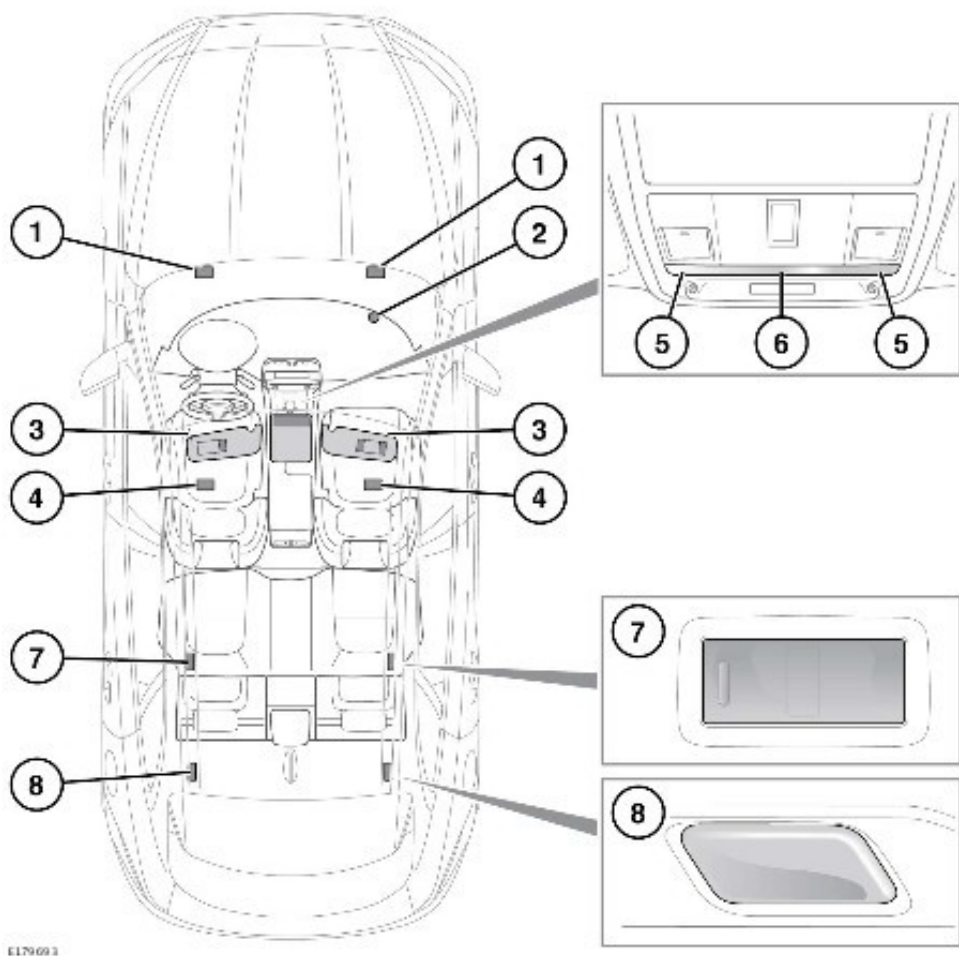
With the headlamps on, the Bend lighting system adjusts the beams when cornering, to provide an improved illumination in the direction of travel.

Bend lighting is deactivated when:

1. Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
2. The vehicle is stationary.

If a system fault is detected, the headlamps attempt to move to the central position and then remain stationary.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS



1. Front seat footwell lamps.
2. Glovebox lamp: Open to illuminate.
3. Vanity mirror lamps: Lift the sun visor flap to illuminate.
4. Rear seat footwell lamps.
5. Front reading lamps: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off.
6. Front interior courtesy lamp: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off.
7. Rear interior courtesy/reading lamps: Press the switch to turn on/off.
8. Luggage compartment lamps.

All the interior lamps (except for the glovebox and the vanity mirror lamps) illuminate automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, or a door is opened. They extinguish approximately 20 seconds after all of the doors are closed, or when the vehicle is locked.

To switch the automatic illumination of the interior lamps off/on, continue to touch the front interior lamp lens (6) until the lamp flashes. **INTERIOR LIGHTS OFF** or **INTERIOR LIGHTS AUTO** is displayed in the Message center accordingly.

Note:

The Luggage compartment lamps automatically operate when the luggage compartment is opened. The on/off status of the interior lamps' automatic illumination, does not affect the operation of these lamps.

## INTERIOR LIGHTS INTENSITY

Use the interior illumination control to adjust the intensity of the instrument illumination. The exterior lights must be switched on while changes are being made. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

## AMBIENT LIGHTING

The Ambient lighting can be adjusted for color and intensity via the Touch screen extra features menu. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#). The exterior lamps must be switched on while changes are being made.

## STEALTH MODE

Stealth mode lowers the level of interior illumination to aid night time driving. Stealth mode can be enabled through the Touch screen **Screensaver** menu. See [GENERAL SETTINGS](#).

Once enabled, Stealth mode is activated by switching the Touch screen off, using the on/off button. See [MEDIA CONTROLS](#). If night time conditions exist when the Touch screen is switched off, interior switch illumination, and Instrument panel back-lighting will automatically reduce to their minimum light levels. Stealth mode will be deactivated if night time conditions no longer exist, or if the Touch screen is switched back on.

Note:

The interior illumination control will not operate while Stealth mode is active. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

## WIPER OPERATION

Caution:

Do not operate the wipers on a dry

windshield. Caution:

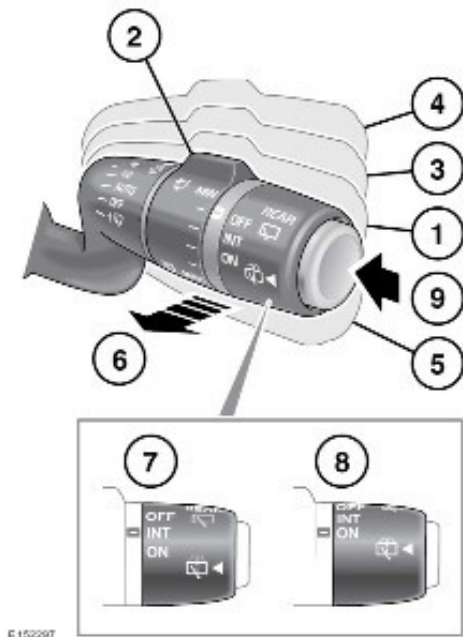
Remove any snow, ice, or frost from the windshield, around the wiper arms and blades, and the windshield scuttle, before operating the wipers.

Caution:

To avoid damage to the bonnet, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See [WIPERS SERVICE POSITION](#).

Caution:

Make sure the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the wipers operate during the car washing process, damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.



1. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Automatic Rain sensing mode. The front wipers respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).

Vehicles without a rain sensor: Intermittent wipe. The time delay between wipes can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).

2. Vehicles with a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic Rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position, the more responsive the system becomes. When automatic Rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system performs a single wipe.

Vehicles without a rain sensor: Rotate the collar to adjust the time delay between wipes when position (1) is selected. The higher the setting, the more frequently wipes occur.

Note:

Wipe frequency increases with vehicle speed.

3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.
5. Single wipe of the windshield, or hold down for further continuous wipes.
6. Windshield wash/wipe: Pull and release to operate the front washers and wipers. The wipers operate for 2 further wipes after the wiper/washer control is released. After a few seconds, a drip wipe function clears any residual washer fluid from the windshield. If more washer fluid is required, pull and hold the wiper/washer control's position.

Note:

The front wipers do not operate while the hood is open.

Note:

A very short pull and release operates the front washers only.

7. **INT**: Rear wiper, intermittent operation. Wiper frequency increases with vehicle speed.

8. **ON**: Rear wiper, continuous operation.

9. Rear window wash/wipe: Press and release to operate the rear washer and wiper. The wiper operates in a set cycle to minimize drips when the button is released. If more washer fluid is required, push and hold the button.

Note:

When Reverse (**R**) gear is selected and the front wipers are operating, the rear wiper activates.

Note:

The rear wiper does not operate while the tailgate is open.

Note:

If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the vehicle has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with the recommended windshield washer fluid. See [LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS](#).

Note:

The windshield is no longer wiped effectively and the automatic Rain sensing function degrades if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible. The wipers service position moves the wipers to allow wiper blade replacement. See [WIPERS SERVICE POSITION](#).

Note:

If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out temporarily halts the wiper operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the vehicle's ignition, when safe to do so. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.

## RAIN SENSOR

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windshield, behind the rear-view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windshield, and automatically activate the windshield wipers accordingly.

Note:

Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windshield.

Note:

The **Wiper Rain Sensor** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See



## [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU.](#)

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper/washer control to the **AUTO** position. The behavior of the system may be adjusted to the driver's preference by rotating the collar (2).

Note:

If the wiper/washer control is turned to the **AUTO** position, the wipers do not operate if either of the front doors are open.

Note:

In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windshield may result in the windshield wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that, under these conditions, the wiper/washer controls are returned to the **OFF** position.

### SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If the vehicle's speed drops below 5 mph (8 km/h) with the wipers operating, the wipers switch to the next lowest speed. When the vehicle's speed increases to over 5 mph (8 km/h), the original wiper speed setting is restored.

Vehicles without a rain sensor fitted also increase the frequency of the intermittent front wipe when the vehicle's speed increases.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

### DRIP WIPE

If the drip wipe function is configured, the wipers operate a few seconds after a wash and wipe cycle has finished. The drip wipe function clears any remaining drips from the windshield.



This feature can be enabled and disabled by retailer/authorized repairer.

### HEADLIGHT WASHERS

The headlight wash feature operates automatically with the windshield wash.

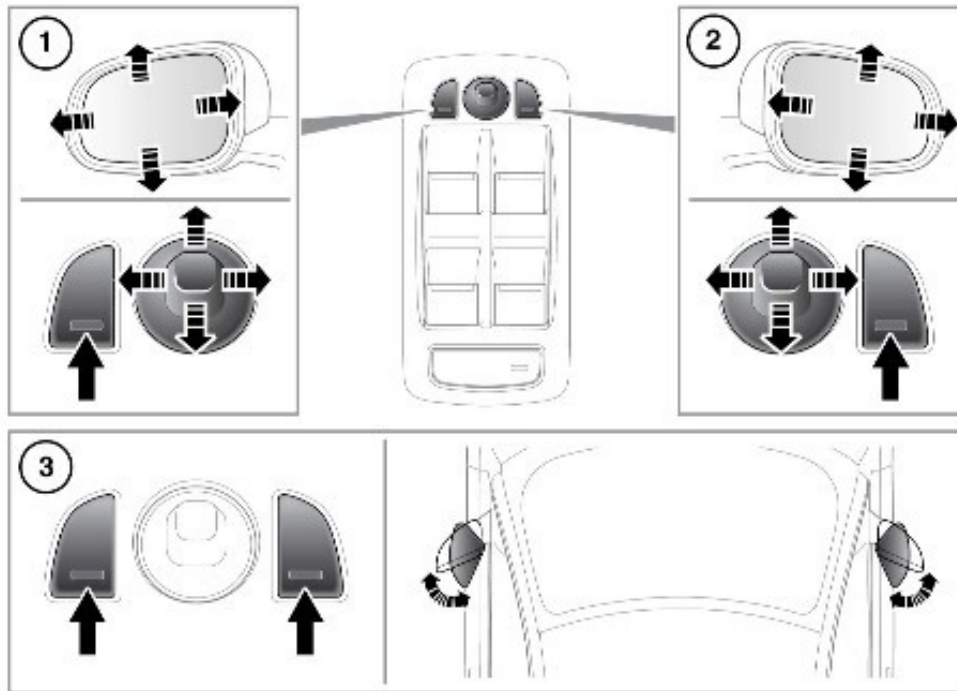
The headlight wash feature operates every fourth operation of the windshield washers. The headlight wash feature operates if headlights are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlight wash.

Switching the headlights or the ignition off and back on again, resets the cycle. See [LIGHTING CONTROL](#), or [SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE](#).

Note:

The headlight power wash operates only if the headlights are switched on and there is sufficient washer fluid in the reservoir.

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS



1. Left mirror adjustment.

2. Right mirror adjustment.

3. Power-fold/unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously. This feature is inhibited at speeds over 70 mph (110km/h).

Note:

A thermal cut-out temporarily disables the power-fold feature if the switches are operated

repeatedly. Note:

The rear-view door mirror heaters operate automatically, according to the external temperature and the heated rear screen operation. Note:

An amount of knock protection is designed into the door mirrors. If a mirror is accidentally knocked inwards or manually folded inwards, the mirror head is disengaged from the folding mechanism. To re-engage the mechanism, fold, then unfold the mirror using the switch.

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is switched on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Press the appropriate button to select the mirror to be adjusted. The button LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm which side is active. Use the joystick control to adjust the mirror's glass.

Note:

Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.



The mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked. This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position (e.g., so only one is folded), press both buttons simultaneously to re-synchronize.

Note:

If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they do not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Note:

Up to 3 different exterior mirror positions can be stored and recalled using the Driving position memory feature. See [DRIVING POSITION MEMORY](#).

## MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

The mirrors can be configured so that when Reverse (**R**) gear is selected, the passenger's door mirror is automatically adjusted to provide an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The dipped position of the mirrors is a preset position. In **R**, the mirrors can be adjusted, but the new position cannot be saved.

Note:

The preset dipped position of the mirror cannot be altered.

When the gear selector is moved out of **R**, or if the vehicle's speed exceeds 7.5 mph (12 km/h) while reversing, the mirror returns to its previous position.

**Reverse-dip Mirror** can be enabled/disabled via the **Vehicle Settings** menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

## RADIO FREQUENCY (RF) TRANSCIVER

Warning:

Do not use the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

Warning:

When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. Potential harm or damage may occur, as the gate or garage door activates during programming.

Caution:

The device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. Interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver. See [INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE](#).

In some countries, the RF transceiver is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear-view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to three different hand-held transmitters. These can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF-operated remote devices.

The transceiver RF approval numbers for the USA and Canada are shown

below: USA and Puerto Rico FCC ID: NZLJLRHL4.

Canada IC: 4112A-JLRHL4.

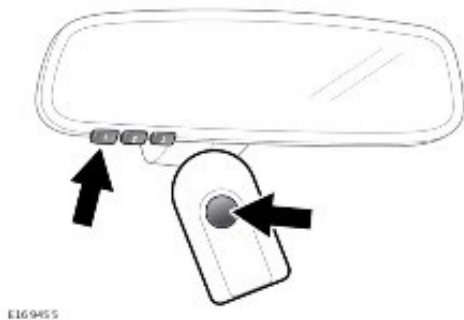
## BEFORE PROGRAMMING

### Caution:

When programming a remote device that may require the operator to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter, unplug the device during the programming process, to prevent possible motor failure.

For the best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

## PROGRAMMING



To program the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Position the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (25 to 75 mm) from the rear-view mirror.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the memory button on the hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button on the RF transceiver. An indicator LED, located on the left side of the mirror, starts to flash slowly.
4. When the LED starts to flash quickly, release both buttons.

To operate the remote device, press and hold the programmed memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

If the LED illuminates continuously, the RF transceiver has been programmed successfully, and the remote device operates.

Note:

The button on the RF transceiver may need to be pressed up to three times.

If the remote device does not operate, and the LED flashes quickly, further programming is required.

These extra programming steps may require assistance from another person:

1. Locate the **smart/learn program** button on the remote device to

programmed. Note:

The name and location of this button may vary, depending on the manufacturer of the remote device.

2. Press and release the **smart/learn program** button. Within 30 seconds, press and hold the desired memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

Note:

The memory button on the RF transceiver may need to be pressed and held for 2 seconds, a further two times.

Note:

Some entry gate systems, and garage door opener systems in Canada, require the operator to cycle (press and re-press) the hand-held transmitter every 2 seconds during programming. If this is the case, continue to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver until the LED flashes quickly.

The RF transceiver should now be programmed. Repeat the programming steps, if further remote devices need to be programmed to the RF transceiver.

To operate a programmed remote device, press and hold the relevant memory button on the transceiver. Release the button when the device starts to operate.

## REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed RF transceiver memory button:

1. Press and hold the desired Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED starts to flash slowly.
2. Follow the instructions described in step (2) onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

## TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.

2. Simultaneously press and hold memory buttons **1** and **3** on the RF transceiver.

After approximately 10 seconds, the RF transceiver LED starts to flash. At this point, release both memory buttons on the RF transceiver. All programming is now erased from the RF transceiver.

Note:

Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.

## RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

United States of America:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada:

This device complies with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

## INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE

Caution:

If the vehicle is sold, it is recommended that all programming is erased from the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver.

For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact retailer/authorized repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website: **www.homelink.com**, or call the toll-free helpline at: 1-800-355-3515.

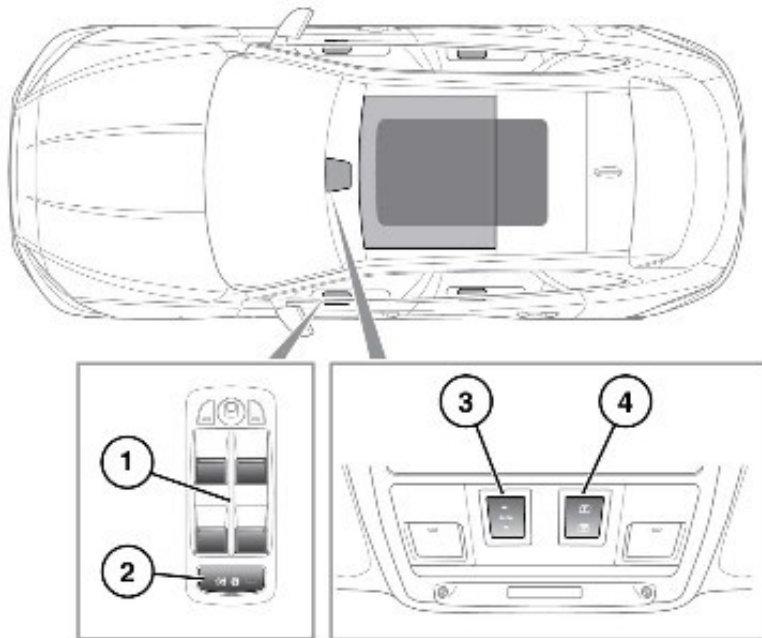
Note:

Retain the original remote feature handset, for future programming

requirements. Note:

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## ELECTRIC WINDOWS



EL 82211

### 1. Window

switches: Note:

Each switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press/pull and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press/pull fully and release for one-touch automatic operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by operating the switch again.

Press the front of the switch to partially/fully

open. Pull the front of the switch to

partially/fully close. Note:

The windows operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

Warning:

Make sure that you remove the Smart key when leaving the vehicle. This prevents unsupervised operation of the windows and sunroof, which may result in an injury.

Caution:

Any ice must be removed from the windows before operating.

### 2. Rear window isolator and child safety locks. See [CHILD SAFETY LOCKS](#).

Warning:

If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the windows. If the windows are operated by young children, there is a risk of serious injury or

death.

### 3. Sunroof:

Note:

The front and rear of the switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by pressing the switch again.

With the sunroof closed, press the rear of the switch to partially/fully raise the sunroof to the tilt position. Press the rear of the switch again to partially/fully open the sunroof.

Note:

If the sunroof blind is closed, the sunroof switch also opens the sunroof blind while operating the sunroof.

With the sunroof open, press the front of the switch to partially/fully close the sunroof.

Caution:

To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof rack load does not interfere with the opening of the sunroof.

### 4. Sunroof blind:

Note:

The front and rear of the switch has a 2-stage operation. Lightly press and hold to manually operate to the required position. Alternatively, press fully and release for one-touch operation. One-touch operation can be halted, at any time, by pressing the switch again.

Press the rear of the switch to partially/fully open.

Press the front of the switch to partially/fully close.

The sunroof blind can be opened whenever required, but it can only be closed when the sunroof is closed. If the sunroof is partially closed, then the sunroof blind only partially closes to the same position.

If the sunroof blind encounters a resistance when closing, it stops and then (dependent on its current position) it either partially or fully opens, to allow removal of the obstruction and to prevent personal injury or damage to the mechanism. Press and hold the front of the switch, within 10 seconds of the partial or full opening, to override.

Note:

If a resonance or a booming sound occurs when a rear window is open, lowering an adjacent front window by approximately 1 inch (25 mm) eliminates the condition.

## WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION



### Warning:

Before closing a window or the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

### Warning:

Closing a window or roof blind onto any part of the body can result in serious injury.

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture, and remove any obstructions. The override procedure is, as follows:

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap prevents closure and lowers the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time holding the switch in the close position. The window raises while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

### Note:

If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window's operation may need to be reset. See [WINDOW RESET](#).

## SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM

### Warning:

Before closing a window, the sunroof, or the sunroof blind, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur.

If the sunroof, or the sunroof blind, encounters a resistance when closing, it stops and then (dependent on its current position) it either partially or fully opens, to allow removal of the obstruction and to prevent serious personal injury or damage to the mechanism. Press and hold the front of the switch, within 10 seconds of the partial or full opening, to override the anti-trap mechanism.

If the sunroof, or the sunroof blind, fails to operate correctly, it may need to be reset. See [SUNROOF RESET](#).

## SOLAR ATTENUATING GLASS

The solar attenuating glass windshield filters sunlight passing through a special laminated layer.



Electronic actuating cards, such as toll road payment cards or Radio Frequency (RF) ID tags, can be fixed at the dedicated locations, on the inside of the windshield. If these cards are located at any other part of a solar attenuating windshield, the electronic scanners may not recognize them.

The fixing location is at the top of the windshield, as shown, close to the interior rear-view mirror. Note:

The electronic actuating card should be in the size appropriate location, on the driver's side of the windshield.

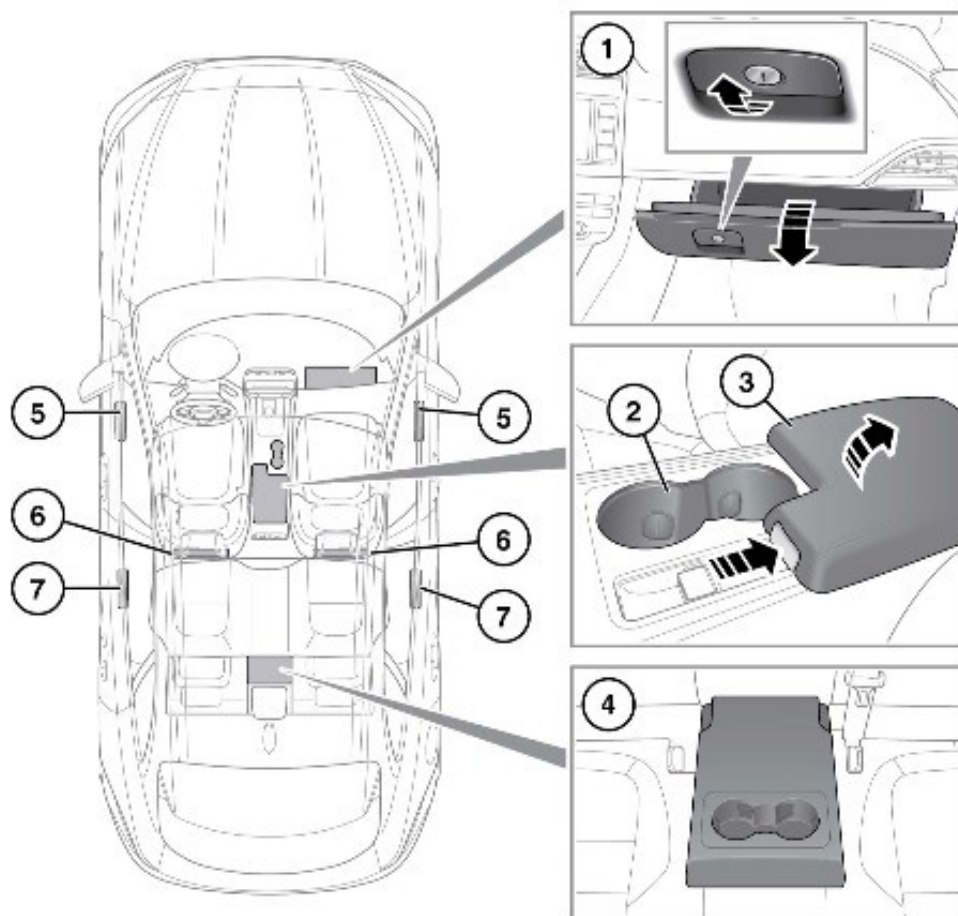
Note:

Transponders, mounted on the front license plate plinth, can be used as an alternative, dependent on the market and availability.

## STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

Warning:

Make sure that any items stored in the vehicle are secure and cannot move. If the vehicle is involved in an accident, subject to sudden braking or a change of direction, loose items can cause serious injury.



E18176L

Storage compartment locations:

1. Glovebox: Pull the release handle to open.

The glovebox can be locked/unlocked using the emergency key blade, mounted in the vehicle's smart key. See [UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE](#).

2. Front cup

holders.

Warning:

Do not drink or use the cup holders, when driving.

3. Cubby box: Push and hold the release button and then lift to open the cubby box lid. To close, lower the lid and then lightly press to engage the catch.
4. Rear cup holders: To access the cup holders, pull the tag at the top of the stored rear seat's armrest and lower.
5. Front doorstorage.
6. Front seat map pockets.
7. Rear doorstorage.

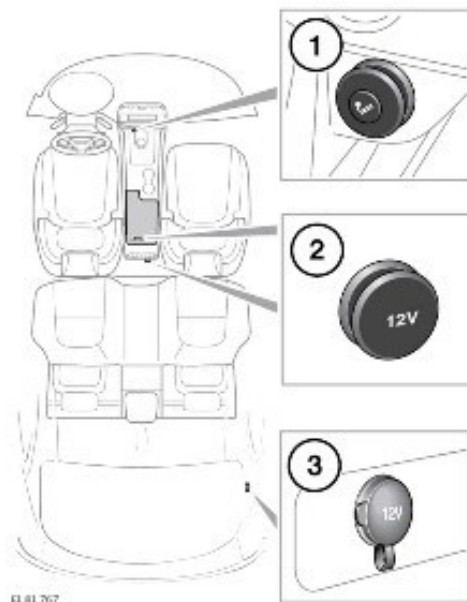
## AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS

Caution:

Only use approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system and/or cause battery discharge. If you are in any doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

Caution:

The engine should be running when using accessories for long periods. Failure to do so can discharge the battery.



Note:

Power sockets can be used to power approved accessories that use a maximum of 120 Watts.

1. Front powersocket.
2. Center and rear power sockets.
3. Luggage compartment power socket.

## LOAD CARRYING

Warning:

Never allow passengers to travel in the loadspace under any circumstances. All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.

Warning:

Always make sure objects carried within the vehicle are secured properly.

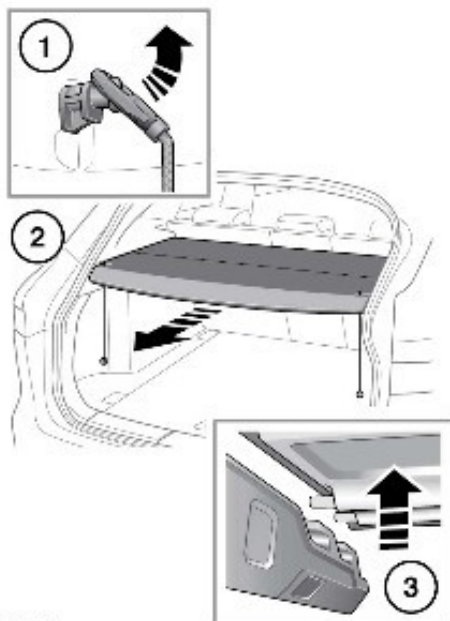
## LOADSPACE COVER

Warning:

Never place objects on top of the loadspace cover. During an accident or sudden maneuver, loose objects can cause serious injury or death.

Caution:

To avoid any possible damage to the top surface of the loadspace cover, make sure nothing is trapped between the two halves when folding the cover.



To remove the loadspace cover:

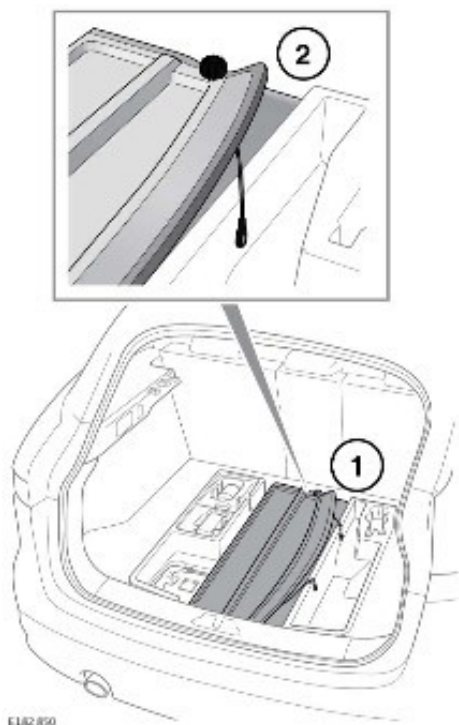
1. Release the two straps from the pins on the tailgate.
2. Pull the loadspace cover back to release the locking pins.
3. Lift the loadspace cover out of the locking pin guides.

Storing the cover:

Warning:

Do not store the loadspace cover loose in the vehicle. During an accident or sudden maneuver, the loadspace cover could cause serious injury or death.

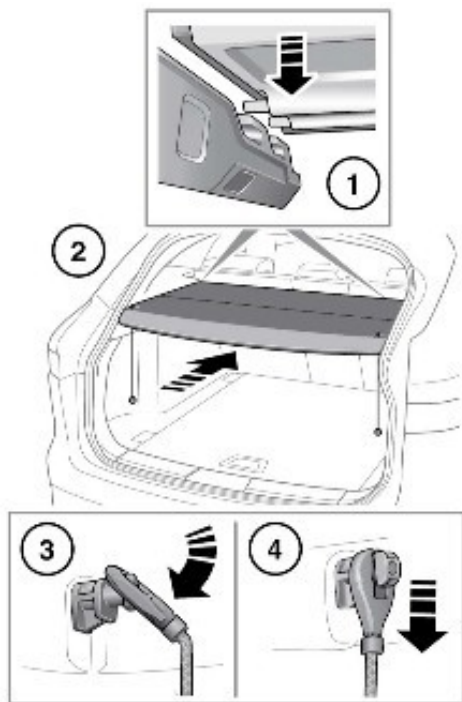
For vehicles without a spare wheel, store the folded loadspace cover in the dedicated storage area underneath the loadspace floor cover.



To store the cover:

1. After lifting or removing the loadspace floor cover. Fold the loadspace cover and place it in the storage area as shown in the illustration.
2. So that the lifting straps do not get trapped and damage the loadspace cover, locate the straps into the dedicated slots.

Refitting the cover:



E1.01758

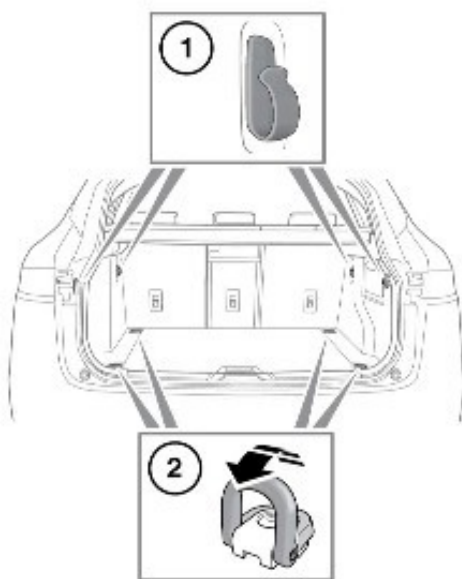
To refit the loadspace cover:

1. Locate the locking pins on the loadspace cover into the guide slots.
2. Push back the loadspace cover to lock the cover into place.
3. Fit the loadspace cover lifting straps over the pins on the tailgate.
4. Pull down lightly on the straps until they click into place.

## LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS

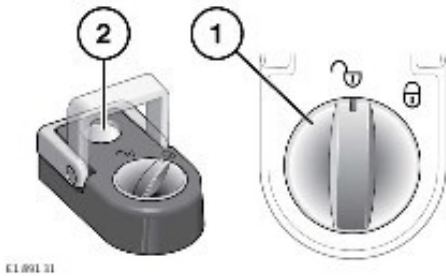
Warning:

All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured.



E1.01756

1. Bag hooks: The bag hooks should only be used for light weight items.
2. Fixed lashing eyes: Use to assist in safely securing large items.



If adjustable lashing eyes are fitted, first turn the locking button counter-clockwise to unlock (1). Press the button (2) and slide to the required position in the luggage rail. Release the button to latch into position. Move the lashing eye slightly, until you hear a click. The lashing eye is now secured. Turn the button clockwise to lock.

Note:

A range of approved luggage retention accessories is available from a retailer/authorised repairer.

## TOWING WEIGHTS

See [WEIGHTS](#), for details of the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), axle weights, and the load in the vehicle's luggage compartment.

Note:

The trailer's tongue weight should also be considered when calculating the GVW.

Note:

When calculating the rear axle loading, remember that the trailer's tongue weight, the weight in the vehicle's luggage compartment, the weight on a roof rack, and the weight of the rear seat passengers must all be added together.

	Engine/transmission variant	lbs (kg)
Unbraked trailers (permissible maximum towing mass)	All vehicles	1 653 (750)
Braked trailer (permissible maximum towing mass)	All vehicles	5 291 (2 400)
Technically permissible maximum static vertical load/mass of the vehicle's coupling point	All vehicles	220 (100)
Maximum trailer tongue weight*	All vehicles	386 (175)
Gross Train Weight (GTW)	3.0L gasoline	10 803 (4 900)
	2.0L diesel	10 714 (4 860)

\*For every lb (kg) above 220 lbs (100 kg) added to the tow ball tongue weight, the same weight **MUST** be removed from the vehicle's payload. This will make sure that the GVW and the rear axle weights are not exceeded.

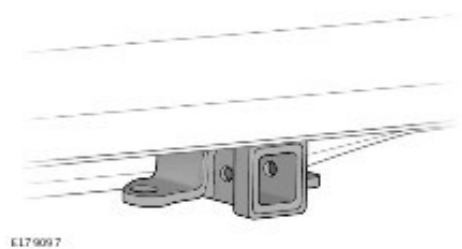
Note:

For every 3 281 feet (1 000 metres) increase above sea level, the GTW must be reduced by 10%.

Note:

For further information, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See [LABEL LOCATIONS](#).

## TOW BALL OPTIONS



Tow hitch tow bar. Also see [TOW HITCH](#).

## TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST (TSA)

Caution:

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate in the event of the trailer jack-knifing.

Caution:

The ability of TSA may be reduced when traveling on slippery surfaces.

When a trailer is attached, TSA automatically detects when trailer sway is developing. TSA then gradually reduces the vehicle's speed, by cutting engine power and applying the brakes to help regain control.

Note:

TSA does not operate when Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.

## HITCH ASSIST

Note:

Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.

Hitch assist aids the process of reversing the vehicle to a trailer's tow hitch.



1. Select Reverse (**R**) to automatically display a rear-view image on the touch screen.
2. Dependent on the specification of the vehicle's camera system, use one of the following options:  
  
Touch the **Hitch Assist** icon to display the guidance lines.  
  
Touch the settings icon to display the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu, then select **ON** from the **Hitch Assist** option, to display the guidance lines.
3. Reverse the vehicle towards the trailer.
4. As the vehicle closes to within 24 inches (600 mm) of the trailer's tow hitch, an automated zoom feature operates to enlarge the view.
5. Continue the manoeuvre until the vehicle and trailer are as close as required.

## TRAILER REVERSE

Trailer reverse displays the predicted path, of both the vehicle and the trailer, as coloured trajectory lines on the touch screen.

Note:

Only use towing equipment that is approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Non-approved towing equipment may adversely affect the accuracy and performance of the vehicle's towing features.



Trailer reverse requires a tracking target sticker to be affixed to a connected trailer, in the same orientation as illustrated. To display the correct sticker location for the trailer, follow the on-screen instructions for the new trailer configuration menus on the touch screen.

Note:

The tracking target sticker must be affixed at a distance of between 1 m and 2 m from the rear of the vehicle. The tracking target sticker must be affixed to a flat vertical surface that is parallel to the rear of the vehicle. Trailer reverse does not operate if these conditions are not met.

Trailer reverse automatically activates, when the vehicle detects a trailer's electrical plug is correctly attached to the vehicle's electrical towing socket. See [TRAILER ELECTRICAL CONNECTION](#).

Switch the ignition off when connecting to the vehicle's electrical towing socket. After connection, switch the ignition on, to enable the vehicle to detect the connection.

Note:

If the ignition is switched on during connection, then opening and closing the driver's door enables the vehicle to detect the connection.

When an electrical towing socket connection is detected, the touch screen guides the driver through a set of menus. Either create a new trailer profile, or select an existing trailer profile.

When connecting a new trailer, the setup screens guides the driver through a series of configuration options for the connected trailer. When complete, the vehicle needs to be driven with the steering wheel in the straight ahead position, to calibrate the trailer. The status is displayed on the touch screen. Select **OK** when complete.

Note:

Trailer reverse view should not be used until the trailer calibration is complete.

In the event of persistent problems with the configuration or calibration of a trailer, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

When a trailer configuration is selected (or created), the trailer reverse view automatically displays on the touch screen, when Reverse (**R**) is selected. The **Trailer Reverse View** touch screen display has two options. Select **Rear Camera** for a full rear view, or select **Wing Mirror Cameras** for a curb view of each side.

## ESSENTIAL TOWING CHECKS

Warning:

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or nose weight. Exceeding any of these limits could cause instability and a loss of control, resulting in serious injury or death.

Warning:

Do not loop the breakaway cable or safety chain over the tow ball, as it may slide off.

Make sure to perform the following essential towing checks:

1. To maintain the vehicle's stability, the trailer's tongue weight should not exceed 7% of the trailer's gross weight.
2. The trailer's tongue weight must be at least a minimum of 4% of the trailer's gross weight.
3. When towing a trailer with more than one axle, load the trailer to achieve even weight distribution between the axles.
4. When calculating the laden weight of the trailer, remember to include the weight of the trailer, plus the weight of the load.
5. If the load can be divided between the vehicle and trailer, loading more weight into the vehicle generally improves stability. Do not exceed the vehicle's weight limits.
6. Increase the rear tire pressures on the towing vehicle to those for the maximum vehicle loading conditions.

7. Make sure that a suitable breakaway cable, safety chain, or secondary coupling is used. Refer to the trailer manufacturer's instructions for guidance.
8. Always connect the breakaway cable or safety chain to the provided connection point. Do not loop it over the tow ball.
9. Make sure that the tow ball is secure.
10. Check the operation of all the lights on the trailer.

## TOWING A TRAILER

### Warning:

Only fit towing accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Always use the towing accessories correctly, according to their manufacturer's instructions. Using non-approved towing accessories may adversely affect the handling and stability of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.

### Warning:

The vehicle's towing eyes and lashing points are not designed for towing a trailer. Never use them for this purpose. Doing so may cause them to fail, resulting in serious injury or death.

### Warning:

Never exceed the maximum weights for either the vehicle, or the trailer. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or a crash.

### Warning:

Do not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), maximum rear axle weight, maximum trailer weight, or the trailer's tongue weight. Doing so can cause accelerated wear and damage to the vehicle, and adversely affect the vehicle's stability and braking. Serious injury or death can also result from a possible loss of control, a vehicle rollover, or a crash.

### Note:

When calculating the vehicle's rear axle weight, the vehicle's payload weights must also be included. Hence, add the combined weights of all the rear passengers, the loadspace, roof rails, accessory equipment, and the tongue weight.

### Note:

Include the trailer's nose weight when calculating the GVW.

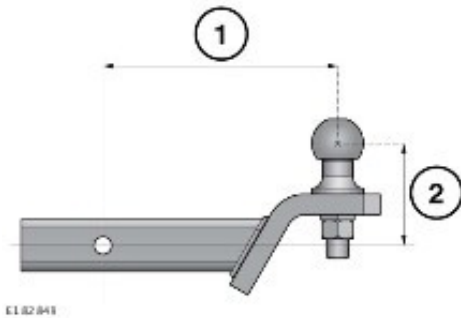
### Note:

A reduction in the performance of the Air Conditioning (A/C) system is a normal function under heavy load towing conditions.

Engine power output always reduces with increased altitude. At 3 280 ft (1 000 m) above sea level, and

for every extra 3 280 ft (1 000 m), deduct 10% from the Gross Train Weight (GTW). See [TOWING WEIGHTS](#).

## TOW HITCH



The tow hitch tow bar is rated as a Class IV. See [TOW BALL OPTIONS](#).

When a tow hitch is fitted, the following dimensions must be adhered to:

1. Maximum dimension is 9 inches (230 mm).
2. Minimum dimension is 4 inches (100 mm).

Consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer for the latest information.

## STARTING THE ENGINE

### Warning:

Never start the engine and leave it running when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

### Caution:

If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking, as this discharges the battery. It may also damage the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

### Note:

The smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen. For example, a smartphone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), games console, etc. Keep the smart key clear of such devices when attempting keyless entry, an engine start, or the engine start backup procedure.

To start the engine:

1. Make sure a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure Park (**P**) is selected.
3. Press the brake pedal firmly.

4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

Note:

For vehicles with a diesel engine, the delay period before cranking begins is longer in low ambient temperatures. The extended delay period is due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay period, the brake pedal must remain firmly pressed.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

## SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

It is recommended that the vehicle is stationary before switching off the engine. Make sure the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied and the transmission is in Park (**P**).

Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

The engine now stops. The vehicle's ignition system also switches off.

To switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving:

Caution:

It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch-off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for longer than 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

With either method, the message **Engine Stop Button Pressed** is displayed in the message center.

## SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION

To switch on the vehicle's ignition system without starting the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle and that the brake pedal is not pressed.

Caution:

If the brake pedal is pressed when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine starts.

2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the instrument panel warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.

## ROLLING RESTART

If the engine is switched off while the vehicle is moving, a rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (**N**) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

Note:

The engine **START/STOP** button is inhibited for 2 seconds after the engine has been switched off.

## KEYLESS START BACKUP

The keyless start backup procedure can be used to disarm the alarm and start the engine if either of the following occur:

1. The vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade.
2. The smart key is not detected by the vehicle.

The keyless start backup procedure can only be used if either of the following messages are displayed in the messagecenter:

1. **Smart Key Not Recognised - Reposition.**
2. **Place As Shown and Press Start Button.**



To initiate the keyless start backup procedure:

1. Position the smart key flat against the side of the steering column with the buttons facing outwards.
2. Note:  
  
There are markings on the steering column to help locate the correct position.
3. While holding the smart key in position, firmly press the brake pedal.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the smart key is not recognized, or the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

All vehicles:

Warning:

If the engine fails to start when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, and the vehicle has been in a recent collision, seek qualified assistance.

If the engine fails to start, and a valid smart key is inside the vehicle, a check must be made to determine the cause. To do this:

1. Switch on the vehicle's ignition. See [SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION](#).
2. Check the instrument panel for any illuminated warning lamps, and the message center for warning messages. Seek qualified assistance, if necessary. See [WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS](#) and [WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES](#).
3. Switch off the vehicle's ignition.

Alternatively, if the engine fails to start, the alarm system may need to be reset. To reset the alarm system, lock and unlock the vehicle. See [UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE](#).

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

Gasoline vehicles only:

If the engine persistently fails to start, carry out the following steps:

1. Make sure that a valid smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (**P**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps in the instrument panel illuminate.
4. Firmly press the brake pedal.
5. Slowly press the accelerator pedal and hold it in the fully pressed position.
6. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine begins to crank.
7. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

Once the engine starts, release the brake pedal, if it is safe to do so.

If the engine still fails to start, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATERS

Caution:

The fitting of an engine block heater does not eliminate the need for antifreeze.

Engines are more difficult to start when the ambient temperature is very low. In geographical areas where temperatures below 14°F (-10°C) are experienced frequently, it is advisable to fit an engine block heater. The block heater has an insulated connector at the front of the vehicle, which is connected to a mains supply using a suitable extension cable. The heater can remain in use overnight, if required. Typically, an engine block heater uses between 0.4 and 1 kWh.

For further information, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine switches off if the vehicle is stopped, for example, at traffic lights. When the brake pedal is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine restarts automatically.

Note:

Always disable the Intelligent stop/start system before wading. Failure to do so could cause damage to the vehicle.

During operation of the Intelligent stop/start system, a warning lamp illuminates. See [INTELLIGENT STOP/START \(GREEN\)](#).

To activate an automatic engine stop, stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 2.5 mph (4 km/h). Apply sufficient brake pressure to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To activate an automatic engine restart, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine also restarts if one of the following occurs:

1. Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
2. The accelerator pedal is pressed.
3. An automatic transmission shift paddle is used to select a gear.
4. Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
5. Demand from the Climate control system increases.
6. The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 0.5 mph (1 km/h).
7. The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.

The following conditions prevent an automatic engine stop:

1. An automatic transmission shift paddle has been used to select a gear.
2. The external temperature is less than approximately 32°F.
3. The external temperature is more than approximately 104°F.



4. The engine has not reached its operating temperature.
5. The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
6. Demand from the Climate control system requires the engine to be running, for example, when in Defrost mode.
7. The vehicle's battery charge is low.
8. Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.

## DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START



To switch the Intelligent stop/start system off, press the Intelligent stop/start button. For more information, see [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

To confirm that the system has been switched off, the button LED extinguishes, and the message **Auto Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed in the Message center.

If the Intelligent stop/start button is pressed while there is a fault with the system, the message **Auto stop/start Not Available** is momentarily displayed in the Message center.

Note:

If the Intelligent stop/start button is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress, the engine restarts.

Note:

The Intelligent stop/start system automatically reactivates the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

## DRIVER EXIT

Note:

The Driver exit feature is only available when Intelligent stop/start is enabled.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle detects when a driver is not present, and automatically switches off the ignition system.

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**) or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the Driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

1. The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and,
2. The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the Driver exit feature switches the vehicle's ignition off, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

Once the vehicle's ignition has been switched off, the vehicle can be locked, if required. See [LOCK CONFIRMATION](#).

## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

### Warning:

Before exiting the vehicle, make sure that the vehicle is stationary. Select Park (**P**). Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB). Switch the engine off. The vehicle can move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected, which may result in death or serious injury.

### Caution:

Never select **P** while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

### Caution:

Never select Reverse (**R**) while the vehicle is in forward motion. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

### Caution:

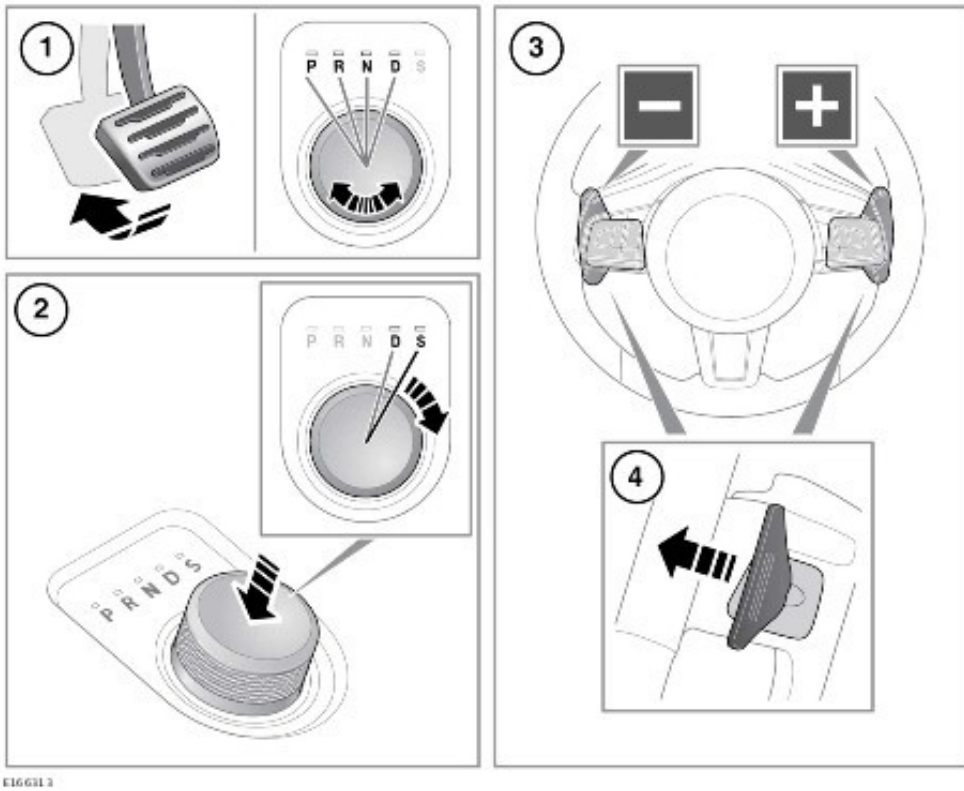
Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

### Caution:

Do not press the accelerator pedal when making a gear selection. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

### Caution:

Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary for a prolonged period, with a drive gear selected and the engine running. In this event, always select **P** or Neutral (**N**) and apply the EPB. The vehicle may move unexpectedly with any other gear position selected.



The selection status of the gear selector and the steering wheel's gear selector paddles (sequential shift) are displayed in the Message center.

When the engine starts, the gear selector elevates up from its lowered, stowed position and the gearbox remains engaged in **P**.

1. To select Drive (**D**), **N**, **R** or **P**, press the brake pedal and then rotate the gear selector to the required position. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

While in **D**, gear changing is fully automatic. The gear change shift points are determined by the accelerator pedal position and the vehicle's current speed.

To achieve rapid acceleration (kickdown) while in **D**, quickly press the accelerator pedal to its full travel. When the accelerator pedal is relaxed, normal automatic gear changing resumes.

Note:

If pressure is applied to the gear selector before the brake pedal is pressed, the selected gear may not be available. In this situation, remove pressure from the gear selector, make sure that the brake pedal is pressed and then select the required gear again.

2. To select Sport (**S**) mode from **D**, press the gear selector down and rotate to **S**. The relevant indicator lamp, by the gear selector, illuminates to confirm selection.

The transmission remains in the lower gears for longer, improving mid-range performance.

To deselect **S** mode, rotate the gear selector back to **D**.

Note:

Before selecting **D**, **R**, **N** or **P**, make sure that the vehicle is stationary and the brakes are applied.

3. Steering wheel (Sequential shift) gear selector paddles: Allows manual gear selection, while the selector is in either the **D** or **S** positions. Lightly pull the left paddle for down-shifts or lightly pull the right paddle for up-shifts.

Note:

The gear shift paddles can be configured to be active in both **D** and **S**, or active in **S** only. Use the **Vehicle Settings** instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Sequential shift can be effective when rapid acceleration and engine braking are required.

A gear shift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See [GEAR SHIFT \(GREEN\)](#).

With **D** selected, each manual gear change via the steering wheel gear selector paddles, is temporary. It is held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering or continually requesting manual gear shift changes via the steering wheel paddles.

Note:

If continued use of the steering wheel (Sequential shift) gear selector paddles is required, select **S**.

4. To manually change gear, briefly pull the relevant steering wheel gear selector paddle.

To exit manual gear selection mode, pull and hold the up-shift gear selector paddle for approximately one second. This returns to automatic transmission operation in **D** or **S**, dependent on the current position of the gear selector. Alternatively, rotate the gear selector from **S** to **D**. This returns to automatic transmission operation in **D**.

Caution:

Do not use **N** for vehicle recovery.

If the gear selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The gear selector should elevate.

If the gear selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a system fault is indicated. The gear selector can still be used in the lowered position. In this event, **P** is not automatically selected, when the engine is switched off. **P** must be selected manually. Consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

## LIMP-HOME MODE

If a transmission system fault is detected, a warning message displays in the message center. In this event, only limited gears may become available. If possible, the vehicle should be carefully driven to the nearest place of safety. In this event, seek qualified assistance.

Note:

The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance is also reduced and must take this into account when driving. The use of the steering wheel's gear shift paddles are also disabled.

Some transmission faults may cause the gear selector to be locked in position, until the ignition is switched off. A flashing gear status in the message center, indicates that the driver's gear request cannot be engaged. In this event, select Neutral (N) and then select the required gear change again.

If the gearbox is still unable to engage the requested gear, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

Adaptive dynamics constantly monitors and automatically adjusts the vehicle's suspension for the current driving style.

If a warning lamp illuminates and the **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** message displays in the Message center, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. See [GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE \(AMBER\)](#) and also See [WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS](#).

If the fault persists, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## IMPORTANT INFORMATION

Warning:

If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so, can result in serious injury or death.

Warning:

If the amber brake warning lamp illuminates, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance. Failure to do so, can result in serious injury or death.

Warning:

Do not rest the foot on the brake pedal while the vehicle is in motion. Doing so can damage the braking system and reduce braking efficiency. The result can lead to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes still function with the engine switched off, but far more brake pedal pressure is required to operate them.

Warning:

Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the brake pedal. The result can be restricted pedal travel and reduced braking efficiency, leading to a crash, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under

such circumstances, it is recommended to lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

#### Warning:

Do not pump the brake pedal at any time. Doing so interrupts operation of the braking system and may increase stopping distances.

It is essential to read and follow the important information instructions contained in the warnings listed. See [BRAKE \(RED\)](#), and also see [BRAKE \(AMBER\)](#).

#### STEEP SLOPES

If the vehicle is stationary on a steep, slippery slope, it may begin to slide, even with the brakes applied. Without wheel rotation, the Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) cannot determine vehicle movement. To counteract this, briefly release the brakes, allowing wheel rotation, then re-apply the brakes to allow ABS to gain control.

#### EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the brakes are rapidly applied, then Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum. The result is that EBA helps to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible.

EBA also varies the brake force at each wheel, this is useful during Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) operation. For example, if ABS operates on the front wheels during normal brake pedal application, then EBA increases the braking force to the rear wheels. ABS control is then also applied to the rear wheels.

The EBA system stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

An EBA fault is indicated by the amber brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the message center. In this event, drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance. See [BRAKE \(AMBER\)](#).

#### ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBO)

Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBO) controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels. The result is that EBO helps to maintain the maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load, e.g., driver only and no luggage, EBO reduces the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, e.g., passengers and luggage, EBO increases the braking force to the rear wheels.

EBO system faults are indicated by the red brake warning lamp illuminating and a warning message displaying in the message center. In this event, gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance. See [BRAKE \(RED\)](#).

## AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING (AEB)

### Warning:

The Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) system is a driving aid only. The driver is always responsible for driving with due care and attention, in a safe manner for the vehicle, the occupants, and other road users. The driver should observe all road signs, road markings and any potential emergency braking situations, and act appropriately.

### Warning:

The AEB system uses forward-facing cameras to detect real vehicles, plus other certified Euro NCAP target objects. AEB is not designed to detect any other objects, including non-industry approved targets.

### Warning:

In order for AEB to operate, it must be able to detect a clear image of the object and be able to determine its movement. If either of these does not occur, the AEB system may not operate.

### Warning:

Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so greatly increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

### Note:

Not all vehicles have the AEB system. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer for confirmation.

AEB uses forward-facing cameras, located above the rear-view mirror, to help identify an imminent risk of collision with another vehicle traveling in front.

In most instances, AEB helps reduce the severity of an impact. In some cases, AEB helps to stop the vehicle before an impact takes place.

### Note:

AEB efficiency is dependent on the condition of the current driving surface, the vehicle's speed, tyres and braking system.

### Note:

Make sure the windshield is kept clean and the camera's line of sight is not obstructed by labels, stickers, etc. Failure to do so can cause incorrect AEB operation.

### Note:

AEB calibration is required if the vehicle's windshield is replaced, or the camera located above the rear-view mirror is moved or replaced. In these events, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

### Note:

Where vehicles are parked outside, in full sunlight and in high ambient temperatures, the forward-facing camera may reach an internal temperature of 210°F (99°C). In this state, the warning message **AEB Unavailable** displays in the message center and AEB does not operate. When the forward-facing camera

cools to less than 190°F (88°C), normal operation is resumed, and the warning message extinguishes.

AEB automatically switches on, every time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

If required, AEB can be switched off via the **Driver Assistance** menu in the instrument panel. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

When driving off-road, it is recommended to switch off the AEB system.

Note:

When the vehicle's ignition is first switched on, AEB may require an initialisation period before it is fully functional. In this state, a message is displayed in the message center. During this period, the efficiency of AEB is limited.

Vehicle detection:

The vehicle AEB detection system operates when the vehicle is traveling between 3 mph (5 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h). If the vehicle AEB detects an imminent risk of collision with a vehicle traveling in front, it automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 22 mph (35 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h), AEB warning messages are displayed in the message center. The messages are displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

Note:

The AEB warning messages are linked to the forward alert function. If the forward alert function is switched off, the AEB warning messages are also disabled.

After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes are only applied for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.

If AEB engages, the driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages, to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

AEB will not operate if:

1. The vehicle is negotiating a tight corner.
2. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is switched off.
3. The forward-facing cameras are dirty or obstructed.
4. The vehicle's speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h).
5. Visibility is impaired due to severe weather conditions, e.g., heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.

Pedestrian detection:

The pedestrian AEB detection system operates when the vehicle is traveling between 3 mph (5 km/h) and 37 mph (60 km/h). If the pedestrian AEB detects an imminent risk of collision with a crossing pedestrian, it automatically applies the brakes. If the vehicle's speed is between 25 mph (40 km/h) and 37 mph (60



km/h), AEB warning messages are displayed in the message center. The messages are displayed just before the brakes are automatically applied.

Note:

The AEB warning messages are linked to the Forward alert function. If the Forward alert function is switched off, the AEB warning messages are also disabled.

After the vehicle has stopped, the brakes are only applied for a few seconds. After this period, the driver must resume full control of the vehicle.

If AEB engages, the driver can override AEB operation by turning the steering wheel, or pressing the accelerator pedal. AEB then disengages, to make sure that the driver remains in full control of the vehicle.

In addition to the items previously listed for vehicle AEB detection, the pedestrian AEB detection system does not operate if:

1. The vehicle's speed exceeds 37 mph (60 km/h).
2. The detected object is not identified as a pedestrian.
3. The detected object is shorter than 39 in (1 m) tall.
4. The pedestrian AEB detection system cannot determine that the target object is a pedestrian.  
For example, if the pedestrian is carrying a large object.

## ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)

Warning:

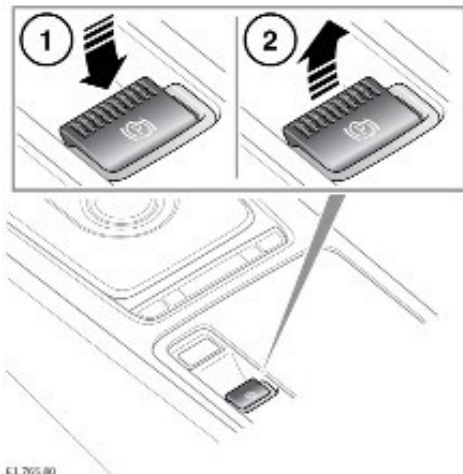
Do not rely on the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle stationary if the brake warning lamp illuminates or the EPB warning lamp flashes. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

Caution:

The EPB operates on the rear wheels, therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.

Caution:

Do not rely on the EPB to operate effectively, if the rear wheels have been immersed in mud or water.



The EPB switch is located on the center console. Operate as follows:

1. With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch. This releases the EPB.
2. Pull the EPB switch up and release it, to apply the EPB. The parking brake warning lamp illuminates to confirm. See [PARKING BRAKE \(RED\)](#).

Note:

The red parking brake warning lamp continues to illuminate for at least 10 seconds after the ignition has been switched off.

The EPB automatically applies when Park (**P**) is selected.

Note:

To prevent automatic operation, with the vehicle stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position before selecting **P**.

The EPB applies automatically if the ignition is switched off and the vehicle's speed is below 2 mph (3 km/h).

Note:

To prevent automatic operation, when the vehicle is stationary, press and hold the EPB switch in the release position. Within 5 seconds, switch off the ignition and continue to hold the EPB switch for a further 2 seconds.

If the EPB is operated when the vehicle's speed is less than 2 mph (3 km/h), the vehicle is brought to an abrupt stop. The stop lamps do not illuminate.

Caution:

Driving the vehicle with the EPB applied will cause serious damage to the brake system.

If the vehicle is stationary with the EPB applied and the transmission is engaged in first gear or reverse, pressing the accelerator pedal gradually releases the EPB and allows the vehicle to be driven away.

smoothly.

When shifting from **P** with the EPB applied, the EPB automatically releases to allow a smooth drive away.

Note:

Automatic EPB release is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

To override the EPB automatic release, pull the EPB switch up and hold.

In an emergency, applying and holding the EPB switch, gives a controlled reduction in the vehicle's speed. This also brings the vehicle to a complete stop. The vehicle must be traveling at more than 2 mph (3 km/h), and the accelerator pedal must also be released. The brake warning lamp flashes, a warning chime sounds and a warning message displays in the Message center. The stop lamps illuminate. Releasing the EPB switch, or pressing the accelerator pedal, releases the EPB.

If the system detects a fault with the EPB, a warning message displays in the Message center. The amber brake warning lamp also illuminates, see [BRAKE \(AMBER\)](#).

If the system detects a fault while the EPB is operating, a warning message displays in the Message center. The red parking brake warning lamp also flashes.

## HILL START ASSIST

Hill start assist activates when starting a hill ascent from a stationary position. When the brake pedal is released, Hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle to move away without rolling backwards.

Hill start assist is part of the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) system.

Any fault with the Hill start assist system is indicated by the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) off warning lamp illuminating. The **Stability Control Not Available - Drive With Care** warning message also displays in the Message center. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) OFF \(AMBER\)](#).

## DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)

Warning:

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to always drive with due care and attention, in all situations.

DSC is enabled automatically when the ignition is switched on. It enhances the vehicle's stability in critical driving situations, e.g. understeer, oversteer, wheel spin, etc. DSC helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine's power output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied. When DSC is activated, the DSC (amber) warning lamp flashes. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) \(AMBER\)](#).

## TRACDSC

### Warning:

Vehicle safety may be reduced by inappropriate use of TracDSC.

### Warning:

With TracDSC engaged, traction may be increased, although stability may be reduced compared to normal DSC.

TracDSC is an alternative setting of Dynamic Stability Control (DSC), with reduced system interventions.

TracDSC enhances the DSC settings for maximum traction in adverse conditions and for different road surfaces, for example, compacted snow, gravel, and sand. This helps to increase the available traction, without having to completely lose the benefits of DSC.

### Warning:

TracDSC should only be used when necessary for the prevailing conditions. Note:

Select DSC when the need for TracDSC has passed.

The reduced system intervention of TracDSC also enables a more involved and focused driving experience.

Conditions where TracDSC is advantageous or necessary are, as follows:

1. To maximize driver involvement.
2. To make progress in adverse conditions and on different road surfaces, for example, compacted snow, gravel, and sand.

### Caution:

DSC must be switched off when traction devices are fitted.

## SWITCHING BETWEEN DSC AND TRACDSC



To switch between DSC and TracDSC, press and hold the DSC **OFF** button (located on the center console) for less than 3 seconds. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

The Message center temporarily displays either **TracDSC** or **DSC ON**.

The DSC off warning lamp illuminates while TracDSC is enabled, to confirm that DSC is disabled. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) OFF \(AMBER\)](#).

The DSC (amber) warning lamp flashes when DSC or TracDSC is active. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) \(AMBER\)](#).

Note:

If the vehicle's cruise control system is currently enabled, then it automatically disables when DSC is active.

## SWITCHING DSC OFF

Warning:

Safety may be reduced by inappropriately disabling Dynamic Stability Control (DSC). In the majority of driving situations, and particularly on-road, it is recommended that DSC is not disabled.

To switch DSC off, press and hold the DSC **OFF** button for more than 3 seconds.

The Message center displays **DSC OFF** and a short warning chime sounds. The DSC off warning lamp also illuminates to confirm that DSC is disabled. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) OFF \(AMBER\)](#).

## SWITCHING DSC ON

To switch DSC on, press and release the DSC **OFF** button.

The DSC system switches on and the Message center temporarily displays **DSC ON**.

The DSC off warning lamp extinguishes to confirm that DSC is enabled. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) OFF \(AMBER\)](#).

Note:

Switching the ignition off and then on again, always reverts the DSC status to **DSC ON**, regardless of the previous status.

The DSC (amber) warning lamp flashes when DSC is active. See [DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL \(DSC\) \(AMBER\)](#).

Note:

If the vehicle's cruise control system is currently enabled, then it automatically disables when DSC is active.

## ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD)

All Wheel Drive (AWD) helps to enhance the vehicle's traction and stability on uneven and slippery road surfaces, and in adverse conditions.

The vehicle automatically varies the status between AWD and Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) to suit the prevailing conditions. The current status can be viewed via the (All Surface Information) **ASI SUITE** extra feature on the Touch screen. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#).

If a fault is detected with the AWD system, the **2 Wheel Drive Only Traction Reduced** warning message displays in the Message center. In this event, the vehicle can still be driven, with extra care, in RWD only. If the fault persists, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

## SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW

### Warning:

The speed limiters are driving aids only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users.

There are two speed limiter systems: Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) and Intelligent Speed Limiter (ISL).

When active, ASL allows a speed to be set that the driver does not wish to exceed.

When active, ISL restricts the vehicles maximum speed to the currently applicable road speed limit. The speed limit information is provided by the traffic sign recognition and navigation systems.



To switch between the speed limiter and cruise control systems, press the **LIM** button on the steering wheel. These systems cannot be used simultaneously.

### Caution:

When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either cruise control or a speed limiter system, is automatically selected.

When in speed limiter mode, to select either system, press and hold the **CAN** button on the steering wheel. The ASL indicator lamp illuminates when ASL is selected, see [AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER \(ASL\) \(AMBER\)](#).

The ISL warning lamp illuminates when ISL is selected, see [INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER \(ISL\) \(AMBER\)](#).

Either system can also be selected via the instrument panel menu, see [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

### Note:

Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the speed limiter set-point is displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the message center. The limiter set-point can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD), see [HEAD-UP DISPLAY \(HUD\)](#).

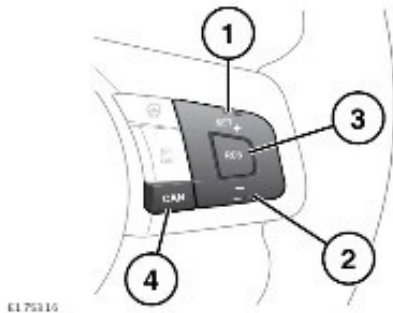
## AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (ASL) CONTROLS

### Warning:

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set-speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed.

### Note:

Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) only operates at speeds between 19 mph (30 km/h) and the vehicle's maximum speed. The speed limit can be set while the vehicle is moving or stationary.



### ASL controls:

1. **SET+**: Press to set or increase the speed limit. The set-speed limit is displayed in the message center.

When a speed has been set, the engine responds normally, up to the set-speed.

2. Press **-** to decrease the speed limit. The set-speed limit is displayed in the message center.
3. **RES**: Press to resume ASL assistance. ASL only resumes if the vehicle's speed is less than the set-speed or 19 mph (30 km/h) above the set-speed. If these criteria are not met, a message is displayed in the message center.
4. **CAN**: Press to suspend ASL assistance. ASL is suspended until the **SET+** or **RES** button is pressed.

### Note:

ASL can also be temporarily suspended by pressing the accelerator pedal to the floor (kickdown). ASL is then suspended until the vehicle's speed drops below the limiter set-point.

## INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER (ISL) CONTROLS

### Warning:

The ISL system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is legal and safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognized by the traffic sign recognition system.

## Warning:

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set-speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed.

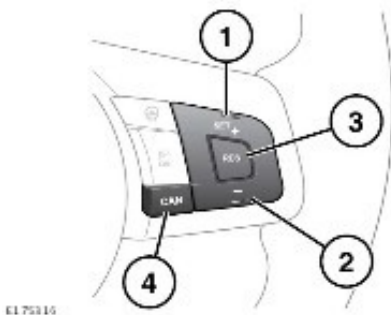
ISL uses the speed limit information provided by the traffic sign recognition and navigation systems. If a valid speed limit is not available, ISL is deactivated and the limiter defaults to ASL.

When ISL is active and limiting, and the speed limit detected is higher than the vehicle's current speed, the vehicle immediately begins to accelerate to the new upper limit. This is provided there is sufficient accelerator pedal input from the driver. If the **RES** button is pressed before the vehicle reaches the new limit, the vehicle accelerates at a faster rate.

When ISL is active and the speed detected is lower than the vehicle's current speed, the vehicle immediately begins to decelerate to the new lower limit. If the **RES** button is pressed before the vehicle reaches the new limit, the vehicle decelerates at a faster rate.

Pressing the accelerator to the floor (kickdown) overrides ISL.

If the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed limit by more than 2 mph (3.5 km/h), e.g., the vehicle gains momentum going down a hill, a warning is displayed in the message center. If the driver does not respond, when the vehicle's speed exceeds the speed limit by more than 5 mph (7 km/h) for 4 seconds, a chime sounds.



1. **SET+**: Press to increase the speed limit's set-point in increments, up to a maximum of 6 mph (10 km/h) over the legal speed limit.

Press and hold the button to set the maximum offset above the legal speed limit.

2. Press **-** to decrease the speed limit's set-point in decrements, by up to a maximum of 6 mph (10 km/h) below the legal speed limit.

Press and hold the button to set the maximum offset below the legal speed limit.

## Note:

Adjustments made to the speed limit set-point are set until the ignition is switched off. Changing from ISL to ASL and back, resets the applied offset settings.

3. **RES**: Press to activate ISL for the first time in a driving cycle. ISL is in stand-by mode until the **RES** button is pressed.

When the vehicle is accelerating to a higher speed limit, press the **RES** button to increase the acceleration speed.



When the vehicle is decelerating to a lower speed limit, press the **RES** button to increase the deceleration speed.

Pressing the **SET+** button also activates ISL.

#### 4. **CAN**: Press to put ISL into stand-by

mode. ISL system limitations:

1. Speed limiters are convenience features. This does not remove the driver's responsibility to adhere to the legal speed limit.
2. The system can only be as accurate as the traffic sign recognition and navigation systems and is only available when traffic sign recognition is sending out valid speed limit information. Always make sure the Navigation system information is up to date.
3. When there is no valid speed limit information, the speed limit icon is replaced with three dashes (- - -). ISL is deactivated and the limiter defaults to ASL. In this case, the driver has to reactivate ISL by pressing and holding the **CAN** button (4), or via the Instrument panel menu.
4. Speed limits are recognized a maximum of 98 ft (30 meters) before passing a speed limit sign.
5. The vehicle's deceleration is limited to engine braking. When dropping the vehicle's speed to below a decreasing speed limit, the driver should also apply the brakes.
6. ISL only responds to a maximum speed limit of 80 mph (130 km/h). For any reported speed limits from traffic sign recognition above 80 mph (130 km/h), ISL sets the limiter speed to unlimited.

Note:

The same limit is set for all markets.

7. The lowest possible speed limit set-point is 19 mph (30 km/h). Any speed limits below this speed results in the vehicle's speed being set at 19 mph (30 km/h). A message in the message center states, **SETPPOINT OUT OF RANGE**.

ISL will operate with a lowered performance/accuracy if:

1. The visibility of the forward-facing cameras (located above the rear-view mirror) are obstructed, for example, with stickers, debris, mud, etc.
2. The visibility of the forward-facing cameras is impaired due to severe weather conditions, for example, heavy rain, fog, snow, ice, etc.
3. The navigation system is not operating correctly, for example, due to a missing or broken SD card.
4. The navigation map data is not up to date.

## USING CRUISE CONTROL

Warning:

In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle's speed may exceed the set speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle's speed, driver intervention may be required.

The cruise control system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.



1. **LIM**: Press to switch between the speed limiter and cruise control systems. These systems cannot be used simultaneously.

When in speed limiter mode, the relevant speed limiter warning lamp illuminates. See [SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW](#).

Selection of cruise control is confirmed when the speed limiter warning lamp is extinguished. Cruise control is in stand-by mode until the **SET +** button is pressed.

Note:

The cruise control system only operates at vehicle speeds in excess of 20 mph (32 km/h).

Caution:

When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either cruise control or a speed limiter, is automatically recalled and activated. The set speed is not recalled.

2. **SET+**: Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed. The cruise control warning lamp illuminates to confirm activation, i.e., no longer in stand-by mode. See [CRUISE CONTROL \(GREEN\)](#).

Note:

Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed is displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the message center. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD) feature. See [HEAD-UP DISPLAY \(HUD\)](#).

The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator pedal. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator pedal.

Note:

Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds above 20 mph (32 km/h).

3. **RES**: Press to resume the set speed.

Caution:

**RES** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

4. Press - to decrease the set speed.

5. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the system's memory.

Cruise control is also canceled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to Neutral (N), or if Dynamic driving mode is activated. See [DYNAMIC](#).

Note:

If the accelerator pedal is pressed for more than 5 minutes, cruise control is canceled.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

Warning:

Adaptive cruise control is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Adaptive cruise control may not function properly under all weather and road conditions.

Do not use adaptive cruise control in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow.

Adaptive cruise control is not a collision warning or avoidance system and driver's should not assume that this feature will correct errors of judgement while driving:

1. **Stationary or slow moving vehicles below 6 mph (10 km/h).**
2. **Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.**
3. **Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.**

The adaptive cruise control system is designed to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead, or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead. A speed may be set at between 20 mph (32 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h).

Note:

For vehicles with a 3.0L engine, the upper limit is 124 mph (200 km/h).

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle, using engine control and the brakes.

The adaptive cruise control system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle to detect objects ahead.

The radar sensor is mounted in the center of the front grille, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

Note:

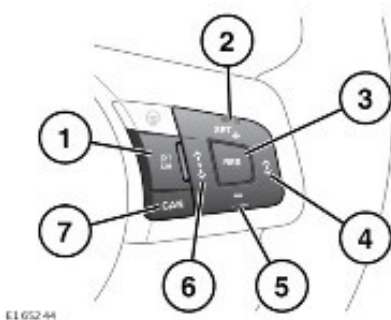
Make sure that this area is kept clean and free from obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

Read the following before using adaptive cruise control:

1. Only use adaptive cruise control when conditions are favorable, i.e., on main roads with traffic moving in lanes.
2. Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles, or areas shared with pedestrians.
3. Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray, or snow.
4. Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
5. It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely, and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
6. Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges, or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the radar sensor from operating.

## USING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The adaptive cruise control system operates via controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by the use of the brake or accelerator pedals.



1. **LIM**: Press to switch between the speed limiter system and adaptive cruise control. The systems cannot be used simultaneously.

When in speed limiter mode, the relevant speed limiter warning lamp illuminates. See [SPEED LIMITER OVERVIEW](#).

Selection of adaptive cruise control is confirmed when the speed limiter warning lamp extinguishes. Adaptive cruise control is in stand-by mode until the **SET +** button is pressed.

Note:

Adaptive cruise control only operates at vehicle speeds in excess of 20 mph (32 km/h). Caution:

When the vehicle's ignition is switched on, the previous state, either adaptive cruise control or a speed limiter, is automatically recalled and activated. The set speed is not recalled.

2. **SET +**: Press to set the vehicle's current speed as the set speed. The adaptive cruise control

warning lamp illuminates to confirm activation, i.e., no longer in stand-by mode. See [CRUISE CONTROL \(GREEN\)](#).

Further pressing of the button raises the set speed above the vehicle's current speed. The speed of the vehicle gradually increases to reach the new set speed.

Note:

Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed is displayed as a marker on the speedometer or a numeric display in the message center. The set speed can also be displayed in the Head-Up Display (HUD) feature, see [HEAD-UP DISPLAY \(HUD\)](#).

3. **RES**: Press to resume the adaptive cruise control set speed after it has been disengaged.
4. **< - >**: Press to decrease the follow mode gap. See [ENTERING FOLLOW MODE](#).
5. Press **-** to decrease the set speed. The speed of the vehicle gradually decreases to reach the new set speed.
6. **< - - - >**: Press to increase the follow mode gap.
7. **CAN**: Press to cancel but retain the set speed in the memory.

## ENTERING FOLLOW MODE

Warning:

When in Follow mode, the vehicle may not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed is maintained.

If a vehicle ahead enters the same lane, or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, your vehicle's speed is adjusted automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the gap setting. The vehicle is now in follow mode.

The follow mode warning lamp illuminates to confirm follow mode is operational. See [FOLLOW MODE \(AMBER\)](#).

The message center displays the gap, set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle then maintains the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

1. The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
2. The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
3. A new gap setting is chosen.

If necessary, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by the adaptive cruise control system is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note:

Driver braking cancels adaptive cruise control.

If the adaptive cruise control system predicts that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds while the adaptive cruise control system continues to brake. **DRIVER INTERVENE** is displayed in the message center. Take immediate action.

When in follow mode, the vehicle automatically returns to the set speed when the road ahead is clear. For instance when:

1. The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed, or changes lane.
2. You change lane to either side or enter an exit

lane. The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a turn signal is used, adaptive cruise control reduces the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated maneuver. If a maneuver is not actioned, the previous gap is restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if adaptive cruise control detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

## FOLLOW MODE OFF

Follow mode can be disabled by pressing and holding the gap decrease button on the steering wheel controls. Press the button until the follow mode off warning lamp is displayed in the message center, see [FOLLOW MODE OFF \(GRAY\)](#).

The follow mode (amber) warning lamp

extinguishes. Note:

Follow mode on is the default setting for adaptive cruise control. Therefore follow mode off is automatically canceled if adaptive cruise control is not used for a prolonged period of time, and when the ignition is switched off.

To switch follow mode back on, briefly press either of the follow mode gap increase or decrease buttons. The previous gap settings resume and the follow mode (amber) warning lamp illuminates.

## CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP

Warning:

It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Four gap settings are available. The selected gap setting is displayed in the message center when the gap adjustment buttons are operated.

Each gap is indicated by an extra bar in front of the vehicle icon in the message center. After the

ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap 3) is automatically selected ready for the adaptive cruise control operation.

## OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

### Warning:

Whenever the driver is overriding the adaptive cruise control system by pressing the accelerator pedal, adaptive cruise control will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal while cruising at a constant speed or in follow mode. If the vehicle is in follow mode when the adaptive cruise control is overridden, the follow mode warning lamp extinguishes. **CRUISE OVERRIDE** is displayed in the message center. When the accelerator is released, the adaptive cruise control function operates again. The vehicle's speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if follow mode is active.

## QUEUE ASSIST

### Warning:

It is important that the driver is ready to intervene when approaching stationary vehicles. Because it is possible that if the vehicle's radar has not seen a stationary vehicle as previously moving, it is possible that queue assist will not stop the vehicle behind that stationary vehicle.

Queue assist is an enhancement of adaptive cruise control and, when adaptive cruise control is active, follows a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on main roads, where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, queue assist brings the vehicle to a stop and holds it stationary.

While the vehicle is held stationary, queue assist requests the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

1. The driver cancels queue assist.
2. The vehicle is stopped for more than 3 minutes.
3. Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
4. A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator resumes adaptive cruise control operation.

At very low speed, queue assist may stop for stationary objects, e.g., when the vehicle ahead changes lane to reveal a stationary object. The vehicle's radar cannot always distinguish between a stationary vehicle and a fixed object like a road sign, drain cover, or temporary barrier. This may cause unexpected braking or cancellation, and the driver should intervene, if appropriate.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTO OFF

Adaptive cruise control disengages, but does not clear the memory when:

1. The **CANCEL** button is pressed.
2. The brake pedal is pressed.
3. Neutral (**N**) is selected.
4. Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
5. Electronic Traction Control (ETC) activates.
6. The difference between the vehicle's current speed and the set speed is too great.
7. The accelerator pedal is used to accelerate beyond the set speed for too long a period, i.e., more than 5 minutes. See [OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE](#).
8. The maximum vehicle speed is reached.
9. The maximum engine revolution speed is reached.

Adaptive cruise control disengages and clears the memory when:

1. The ignition system is switched off.
2. A fault occurs in the adaptive cruise control system.

## RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE

Caution:

**RES** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RES** button after adaptive cruise control has been canceled, e.g., after braking, adaptive cruise control becomes active again provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed is resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes follow mode to become active) and the set speed is displayed in the message center. Queue assist may be resumed above 6 mph (10 km/h).

Note:

When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set follow mode gap. A closer set gap promotes greater acceleration.

Note:

When resuming a set speed while in a bend in the road, acceleration is reduced. A more severe bend reduces acceleration further. Remember that adaptive cruise control and queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.

## HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



During some situations, the adaptive cruise control system may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible warning sounds, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** in the message center, if adaptive cruise control detects:

1. A failure has occurred while the system is active.
2. That using maximum adaptive cruise control braking only is not

sufficient. Note:

Adaptive cruise control only operates when the gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**).

Note:

When adaptive cruise control is engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal adaptive cruise control operation.

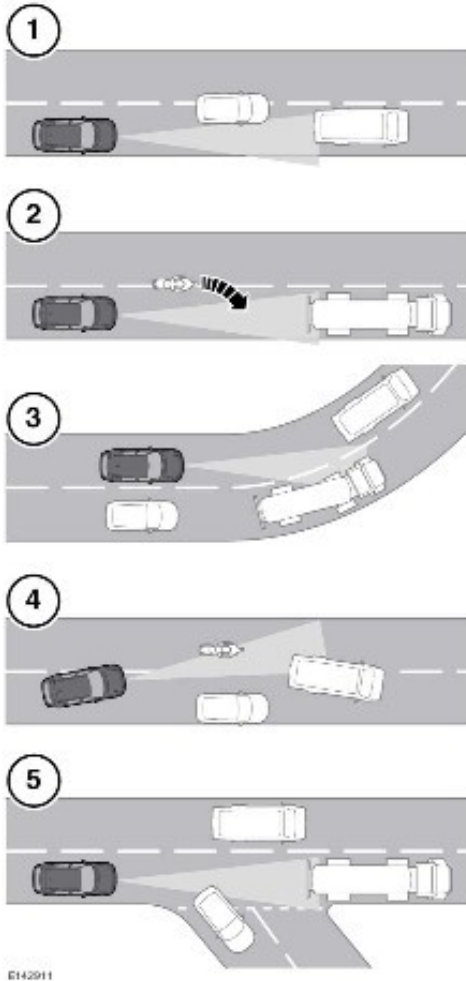
Note:

When braking is applied by adaptive cruise control, the vehicle's brake lamps illuminate.

Note:

When auto stop/start is enabled, it may operate during a queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.

## DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into the same lane as the vehicle being driven. The vehicle is only detected once it has moved fully into the same lane as the vehicle being driven.
3. There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front, when going into and coming out of a bend.
4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of the same lane as the vehicle being driven. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these situations, the adaptive cruise control system may operate unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene, if necessary.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL MALFUNCTION

If a fault occurs while adaptive cruise control, or follow mode is operational, adaptive cruise control switches off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER**

**INTERVENE** is displayed briefly in the message center and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**.

If a fault with adaptive cruise control, or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed. It is not possible to activate adaptive cruise control in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow, or ice on the radar sensor or cover may inhibit adaptive cruise control operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metalized badges may also affect adaptive cruise control operation.

If this occurs in adaptive cruise control or follow mode, the audible alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** displays briefly. The message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** is then displayed.

Note:

The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when adaptive cruise control is inactive, e.g., on initial starting or with adaptive cruise control switched off, the message **RADAR SENSOR BLOCKED** is displayed.

Tires, other than those recommended for your vehicle, may have different circumferences. This can affect the correct operation of ACC.

## FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION

Warning:

The forward alert function may not react to slow moving vehicles. Warning:

The forward alert function uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control. The same performance limitations apply. See [ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW](#).

The forward alert function provides limited detection and warning of objects close ahead, while the vehicle is moving forwards. When the function is active, a warning lamp displays in the instrument panel. See [FORWARD ALERT \(GREEN\)](#).

If a vehicle or object is detected in the user defined sensitivity area, a warning tone sounds and the message **FORWARD ALERT** displays in the message center. If this occurs, the driver should take appropriate action immediately.

The sensitivity of the forward alert function can be adjusted, when adaptive cruise control is switched off.

To reduce the sensitivity, press the < - > button on the adaptive cruise control steering wheel controls. When pressed, the current setting is displayed in the message center, accompanied by the message **FWD ALERT < - - - >**. Press the < - > button again, to reduce the sensitivity.

To increase the sensitivity, press the < - - - > button on the adaptive cruise control steering wheel controls. When pressed, the current setting is displayed in the message center, accompanied by the message **FWD ALERT** < - - - >. Press the < - - - > button again, to increase the sensitivity.

Note:

The new forward alert function setting is retained when the vehicle's ignition is switched off.

The forward alert function can be switched on and off via the **Driver Assistance** menu in the Instrument panel. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

If the forward alert function is switched off, the Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) warning messages are also switched off. See [AUTONOMOUS EMERGENCY BRAKING \(AEB\)](#).

## ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

Caution:

The Advanced Emergency Brake Assist (AEBA) system may not react to slow moving vehicles. The system does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles traveling in the opposite direction.

Caution:

Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large, e.g., to avoid a collision.

Caution:

The system utilizes the same radar sensor as the adaptive cruise control system and forward alert function, and the same limitations of performance apply.

AEBA is only fitted on vehicles with adaptive cruise control, and functions even if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

AEBA is available at speeds above approximately 5 mph (7 km/h). It improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

If the risk of a collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, AEBA is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently, in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See [EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST \(EBA\)](#).

Note:

Braking performance is only improved if the driver applies the brakes.

If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the message center. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system still operates, but without AEBA. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer to have the fault rectified.

## INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING

Warning:

The Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) system may not react to slow moving vehicles.

Warning:

IEB does not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not traveling in the same direction as the vehicle.

Warning:

Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large, e.g., to avoid a collision.

Warning:

IEB uses the same radar sensor as adaptive cruise control and forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See [ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW](#).

Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) is only fitted on vehicles with adaptive cruise control. The system functions even if adaptive cruise control and forward alert are switched off.

The purpose of the IEB feature is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable.

The IEB feature is available at all speeds.

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB applies the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** may be displayed in the message center. The system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a retailer/authorized repairer.

Note:

The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tires and the current road surface.

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain, e.g., or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the message center. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system still operates, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## DRIVING MODES OPERATION



Use the buttons, located on the center console, to move through the different driving modes.

See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

The currently selected driving mode's LED indicator lamp illuminates to confirm the selection. The message center displays the relevant driving mode icon (except for normal mode) and a temporary confirmation message.

Note:

Changing between the driving modes alters various vehicle settings. For example, the engine's revolution speed (rpm) may alter, while at a constant accelerator pedal position. The adaptive dynamics suspension and the steering system may also feel heavier or lighter. These changes are not dramatic but are noticeable.

## DYNAMIC



The dynamic driving mode coordinates the vehicle's control systems to help enhance traction, handling, and driveability. The driver becomes more involved, which helps to deliver a high performance driving experience.

Note:

The dynamic driving mode remains selected for approximately 6 hours after the ignition is switched off. If required after this time, the dynamic driving mode will have to be selected again.

Note:

During manual gear selection, with the dynamic driving mode selected and the transmission in Sport (S), the transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. In this condition, an automatic transmission does not change up automatically, even when the engine's revolution (rpm) speed limit is reached. The gear shift indicator warning lamp illuminates briefly in the message center, at the recommended (up- shift) gear change point. See [GEAR SHIFT \(GREEN\)](#).

## NORMAL



Select the normal driving mode to return all of the vehicle's systems to their normal settings.

The normal driving mode should be selected once the need for any other driving mode selection has passed.

## ECO



The **ECO** driving mode modifies the vehicle's settings to help reduce fuel consumption and to encourage a more efficient driving style. For example, the accelerator pedal response and the automatic gear shift changes are adjusted.

Selecting the **ECO** driving mode also changes some of the vehicle's heating and ventilation settings:

1. The heated seats are switched off.\*
2. The climate seats are switched off.\*
3. The heated steering wheel is switched off.\*
4. The auto heated screen deployment is set to off.
5. The auto blower intensity is set to low.

Note:

\*These features are dependent on the vehicle's specification.

The audio volume may also be adjusted if currently set to a high volume.

If required, the driver can override these changes by normal operation of each feature or its menu setting.

Note:

The **ECO** driving mode may also make subtle changes to the rate of the cabin's heating or cooling, and also the amount of air recirculation.

When the **ECO** driving mode is selected, an instantaneous driving style rating is displayed in the message center.

The current driving style is compared against the **ECO** driving mode system's recommended driving style.

The **Eco Data** system provides a number of features that provide extra vehicle efficiency data and guidance. The **Eco Data** menu can be accessed via the **EXTRA FEATURES** menu from the touch screen. See [TOUCHSCREEN CONTROLS](#).

Note:

The **Eco Data** features only begin recording data after the vehicle has traveled at least 0.6 miles (1 km).

Note:

The **Eco Data** features only monitor the driver's manual inputs, e.g., accelerator pedal, brake pedal, etc. Any automatic inputs from the vehicle, e.g., operation of the accelerator pedal and brake pedal via the automatic cruise control, are not measured. Any data not being measured and recorded is grayed-out in the message center display.

## ADAPTIVE SURFACE RESPONSE (AdSR)

Note:

For vehicles without the Adaptive Surface Response (AdSR) driving mode, see [RAIN/ICE/SNOW](#).



The AdSR driving mode detects different surfaces and helps to enhance the vehicle's stability for both low and medium grip surfaces.

The selection of the AdSR driving mode is recommended when driving in adverse weather conditions. For example, ice, rain, and on surfaces such as grass and gravel.

The AdSR driving mode helps the vehicle to perform in a more gentle and controlled manner. Hence it helps to avoid skidding and improves progress in adverse conditions.

Note:

The AdSR driving mode remains selected indefinitely, even after the ignition is switched off. The AdSR driving mode must be deselected, if no longer required.

To help further enhance low speed maneuvering and pulling away from a standstill, in adverse conditions, see [LOW FRICTION LAUNCH](#).

Winter tires and all-season tires also help to further enhance the vehicle's stability in adverse weather conditions. See [USING WINTER TIRES](#).

## RAIN/ICE/SNOW

Note:

For vehicles without the Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode, see [ADAPTIVE SURFACE RESPONSE \(AdSR\)](#).



The Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode enhances the vehicle's stability in low grip conditions.

The Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode helps the vehicle to perform in a more gentle and controlled manner. Hence it helps to avoid skidding and allows more confident progress under adverse conditions.

Note:

The Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode cannot be active at the same time as the dynamic driving mode.

Note:

The Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode remains selected indefinitely, even after the ignition is switched off. The Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode must be deselected, if no longer required.

Winter tires and all-season tires also help to further enhance the vehicle's stability in adverse weather conditions. See [USING WINTER TIRES](#).



## LOW FRICTION LAUNCH

Low friction launch helps to further enhance low speed maneuvering and pulling away from a standstill, in adverse conditions.

Low friction launch is accessed via the (All Surface Information) **ASI SUITE** extra feature on the touch screen. Follow the on-screen instructions. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#).

The operation of low friction launch is further enhanced if the Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode, or the Adaptive Surface Response (AdSR) driving mode, is enabled. See [RAIN/ICE/SNOW](#), or see [ADAPTIVE SURFACE RESPONSE \(AdSR\)](#).

Note:

Some vehicles may have the AdSR driving mode instead of the Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode.

Note:

Low friction launch also operates if the normal driving mode is selected. See [NORMAL](#). To allow low friction launch to be enabled, make sure that:

1. The vehicle is stationary.
2. The accelerator pedal is completely released.
3. Either the Rain/Ice/Snow (AdSR) driving mode, or the normal driving mode is enabled.
4. All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) is not enabled. See [USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM](#).

Low friction launch only operates at vehicle speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h). If this maximum speed is exceeded, low friction launch is disabled.

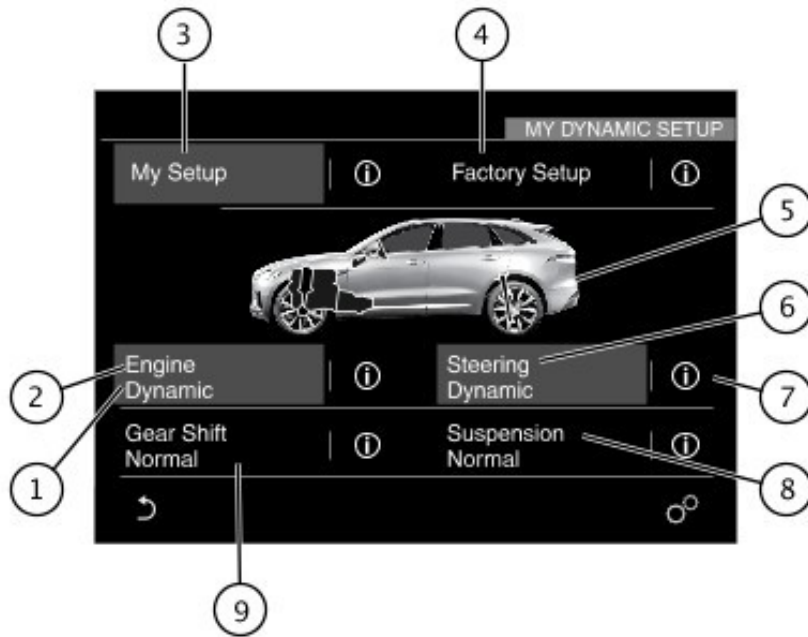
Low friction launch is also disabled if:

1. ASPC is enabled.
2. The ECO driving mode or the dynamic driving mode is selected.
3. The accelerator pedal is quickly pressed to its full travel (kickdown).
4. A system fault is detected. In this event, a warning message displays in the message center and on the touchscreen.

## CONFIGURABLE DYNAMICS

Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



E184031

Vehicles with configurable dynamics, allow the dynamic driving mode settings to be configured via the touch screen for selected characteristics. To select this extra feature, see [TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS](#).

1. Status indicator information: **Dynamic** or **Normal**.
2. **Engine**: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
3. **My Setup**: Touch to switch the user settings on or off.
4. **Factory Setup**: Touch to switch on or off.
5. Selected dynamic functions display.
6. **Steering**: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
7. Function description: Touch to display.
8. **Suspension**: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.
9. **Gear Shift**: Touch to select the **Dynamic** or **Normal** setting.

## PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM OVERVIEW

### Warning:

Use extreme care when maneuvering the vehicle in a reverse direction, to avoid serious injury or death.

All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) helps the driver to maneuver the vehicle on slippery surfaces, e.g., ice, snow, grass, gravel, sand, mud, etc. ASPC operates in either a forward or a reverse direction at low speeds. ASPC is useful when pulling away from a standstill, ascending or descending an incline, and when driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

## USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM

### Caution:

Do not attempt a steep descent if All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) is not enabled, or if any warning messages are displayed in the message center.

### Caution:

The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.



The ASPC button is located on the centre console. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

### Note:

The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be completely closed to enable ASPC.

Press and release the ASPC button, to enable the system. The button's LED lamp illuminates, and a warning lamp also illuminates in the instrument panel to confirm. See [PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM \(AMBER\)](#).

### Note:

Park assist, wade sensing, and auto stop/start are disabled while ASPC is in operation. The vehicle's cruise control and speed limiter systems are also disabled.

Press and release the ASPC button again to disable the system. The button's LED lamp and the warning lamp extinguishes to confirm.

When the ignition is switched off, ASPC is disabled.

### Note:

ASPC is also disabled during operation of the park assist feature.

When enabled, ASPC defaults to descent control mode, i.e., the system limits the vehicle's downhill speed, using the brakes.

Descent control mode should be used in the event that the vehicle is to make a descent:

1. Select the required position for the gear selector.
2. Release the vehicle's brakes to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress, up to the minimum feature speed of 2.2 mph (3.6 km/h).
3. ASPC maintains this speed. Unless ASPC detects the use of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, or the **SET+** button on the right side of the steering wheel.

Note:

Descent control mode resumes when the accelerator pedal, or the brake pedal, is released, and the steering wheel's **SET+** button is not used.

Note:

If the steering wheel's **SET+** button is used, ASPC changes to full function mode. See [PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS](#).

Full function mode controls the vehicle's speed via the use of both the brakes and engine torque.

Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the use of ASPC. For example, making an ascent, pulling away from a standstill, and driving on unstable and slippery driving surfaces.

Note:

Full function mode does not operate with the gear selector in the Neutral (**N**) position. In this event, a message displays in the message center.

Note:

Press and hold the brake pedal, while using the **SET+** button when the vehicle is stationary.

ASPC can also be enabled by pressing and releasing the button while the vehicle is moving, with no brakes applied. The current vehicle speed is then used as the set speed.

Note:

If the vehicle's brakes are firmly applied during ASPC operation, the system exits full function mode and enters into descent control mode.

Note:

Light and gentle application of the brake pedal during ASPC operation, lowers the vehicle's target speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, ASPC maintains the speed at which the brake pedal was released.

Note:

The driver can override ASPC operation at any time, using the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal.

Note:

If the vehicle's speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), ASPC operation is suspended. ASPC is then in stand-by mode, until the vehicle's speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h).

Note:

If the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h), ASPC is disabled. If required, ASPC will have to be switched on again.

When ASPC is enabled and the brake pedal fully released, the system helps to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

1. Pull away from a standstill, in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
2. Perform low speed maneuvering in a forward or reverse direction.
3. Make progress and maintain a selected, low target (set) speed, up to a maximum of 19 mph (30 km/h).

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, a warning message displays in the message center. In this event, ASPC fades-out and becomes temporarily inactive. When the brakes have returned to normal operating temperatures, the message extinguishes and ASPC resumes normal operation.

## PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS

When All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) system is enabled, the desired target set speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted. Use the control buttons mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

1. **SET+**: Press to enable ASPC to recognise that the desired set target speed for the vehicle, is to be set and adjusted. Then, press repeatedly (or press and hold) to increase the set target speed, up to a maximum speed of 19 mph (30 km/h). Alternatively, while making progress, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set target speed.

Note:

If the vehicle is at a standstill, press and hold the brake pedal while using the **SET+** button. Note:

Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides the current set target speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, ASPC reverts back to the previously selected set target speed.

Note:

The set target speed is displayed in the instrument panel. Note:

Selecting very low speeds when pulling away on slippery surfaces, can affect the vehicle's ability to make progress. For improved pulling away performance, it is recommended to select a set target speed that is sufficient to maintain the vehicle's progress.

2. **-**: Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to decrease the desired set target speed, down to a minimum speed of 2.2 mph (3.6 km/h).

Note:

Light and gentle application of the brake pedal also lowers the set target speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, ASPC maintains the speed at which the brake pedal was released.

If the brake pedal is pressed when ASPC is active, then a slight pulsation movement might be

felt through the brake pedal.

3. **CAN:** Press to cancel the set target speed. ASPC then exits full function mode and reverts to descent control mode. See [USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM](#).
4. **RES:** Press to resume the set target speed, if the set target vehicle speed has been lowered by gently applying the brake pedal.

Note:

**RES** should only be used if the driver is aware of the set target speed and intends to return to it.

When the vehicle is traveling at speeds between 19 mph (30 km/h) and 50 mph (80 km/h), ASPC operation is suspended. The system enters into stand-by mode and the ASPC warning lamp flashes. ASPC operation resumes when the vehicle's speed is less than 19 mph (30 km/h), but does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 50 mph (80 km/h), ASPC is disabled and the warning lamp extinguishes. If required, ASPC will have to be switched on again.

## LANE DEPARTURE WARNING (LOW)

Warning:

The Lane Departure Warning (LOW) system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings and situations that are not detected or recognized by the LOW system.

The LOW switch is located in the lower switch panel at the driver's side of the fascia. Press to enable or disable the LOW system. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).



When enabled, an indicator lamp illuminates in the message center to confirm. The vehicle's position within the lane displays graphically, in the indicator lamp, with changes to the icon lane colors and to the vehicle's direction.

The LOW system can also be switched on or off via **DRIVER ASSISTANCE** in the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

When the ignition is switched off and on again, the LOW system settings remain as previously set. The LOW system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror.

Note:

Make sure the windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

If the vehicle crosses either of the lane markings that it is traveling within, without activation of the appropriate turn signal, the LOW system alerts the driver via the following methods:

1. Steering wheel vibration.
2. Graphical displays in the message center.

Note:

The LOW system only provides warnings to the driver. It does not assist in changing the direction of the vehicle or operate any of the vehicle's systems.

Note:

The LOW system does not detect unmarked edges of the road.

The sensitivity of the LOW system can be adjusted between **High Sensitivity** or **Normal Sensitivity** via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL](#).

When set at **Normal Sensitivity**, the LOW system suppresses any warnings, if driver intervention is detected, as follows:

1. Operation of the accelerator pedal.
2. Significant movement of the steering wheel.
3. Operation of the brakes.
4. Activation of the appropriate turn signal.

When set at **High Sensitivity**, the LOW system does not suppress any warnings, if driver intervention is detected (unless the appropriate turn signal is activated).

If the LOW system detects a fault or is not available, then the general warning/information message (amber) displays in the message center. See [GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE \(AMBER\)](#).

Lane Departure Warning limitations:

1. When set at **High Sensitivity**, LOW is active between 30 mph (50 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h).
2. When set at **Normal Sensitivity**, LOW is active between 40 mph (60 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h).
3. The lane in use must be wider than 8.2 ft (2.5 m).
4. No warning given if the correct turn signal is active.
5. Not active when driven off a recognized road surface, e.g., where there are no road markings.

The performance of the LOW system may also be affected in the following conditions:

1. Driving in adverse conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
2. Driving over worn, damaged or temporary lane markings, for example, road works, etc.
3. Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.

4. Driving very close to another vehicle.
5. Tight deviations of the roads and their gradients.

## LANE KEEPING ASSIST (LKA)

### Warning:

Lane keeping assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all road markings.

Lane keeping assist is an enhancement of the lane departure warning system. It helps to keep the vehicle in the current roadway lane, e.g., while driving on a multi-lane road. When the vehicle becomes too close to lane markings on either side, without the turn signals being used, the driver is made aware of it. A gentle rotational force is automatically applied to the steering wheel. The force can be felt by the driver and it indicates that a steering correction should be made. The rotational force can be overridden to make a lane change without use of the turn signals. When an override is made, and a lane change is made without use of the turn signals, lane departure warning alerts are triggered. See [LANE DEPARTURE WARNING \(LDW\)](#).

When lane departure warning is switched on, lane keeping assist can be selected via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. The sensitivity of the steering wheel rotational force can be adjusted via **LKA Settings, Sensitivity**, then select **High Sensitivity** or **Normal Sensitivity**.

When the ignition is switched off and on again, the last choice of lane departure warning or lane keeping assist is reinstated.

### Caution:

Low tire pressure and/or steering tracking out of alignment affects lane keeping assist. Both of these conditions may apply an effect where constant steering adjustment is required.

Lane keeping assist disables when a fault is detected. A message displays in the message center. If the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## DRIVER CONDITION MONITOR

The purpose of the driver condition monitor is to evaluate driving technique for signs of driver fatigue. If it determines the driver is fatigued, the message center displays the warning, **Take a break!**, for 1 minute, accompanied by an audible chime. If driving continues for more than 15 minutes after the first warning, without taking a break, a further warning is given. The warning continues until the **OK** button on the steering wheel menu control is pressed.

The driver condition monitor is always active at vehicle speeds between 37 mph (60 km/h) and 112 mph (180 km/h). It can be switched off via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

If the driver condition monitor develops a fault, a double warning icon displays in the message center. It is then unavailable until the problem is rectified. If the fault does not clear after the ignition is switched off and on again, consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



## TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

### Warning:

The traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants, and the other road users. The driver should still observe all road signs and road markings.

The traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the rear-view mirror. The camera detects speed signs, no overtaking signs and variable overhead speed signs. Symbols of the detected signs are displayed in the message center and the head-up display. Traffic signs with extra information, e.g., reduced speed limits, are also detected and compared with the vehicle's operating systems. When no speed limit signs are detected, relevant speed limit information from the navigation system displays in the message center and the head-up display.

### Note:

If the standard road navigation is not available, the traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera only. In this condition, system performance may be limited.

### Note:

Make sure that the windshield area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions. For example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

The traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via **Driver Assistance** in the instrument panel menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

The system operates up to the vehicle's maximum speed.

The three basic functions of the traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

1. **Speed limit detection:** A corresponding sign is displayed in the message center.
2. **Speed alert:** When the vehicle's speed is greater than (or equal to) the detected speed limit, a warning is displayed. The message center displays a flashing red ring around the detected speed limit sign.

Speed alert can be switched on or off, or the settings can be adjusted to display three different settings:

When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.

When the vehicle's speed is 5 mph (10 km/h) above the detected speed limit.

When the vehicle's speed is 10 mph (20 km/h) above the detected speed limit.

3. **No passing zone:** When a no passing sign is detected, the system also displays a corresponding sign in the message center.

### Note:

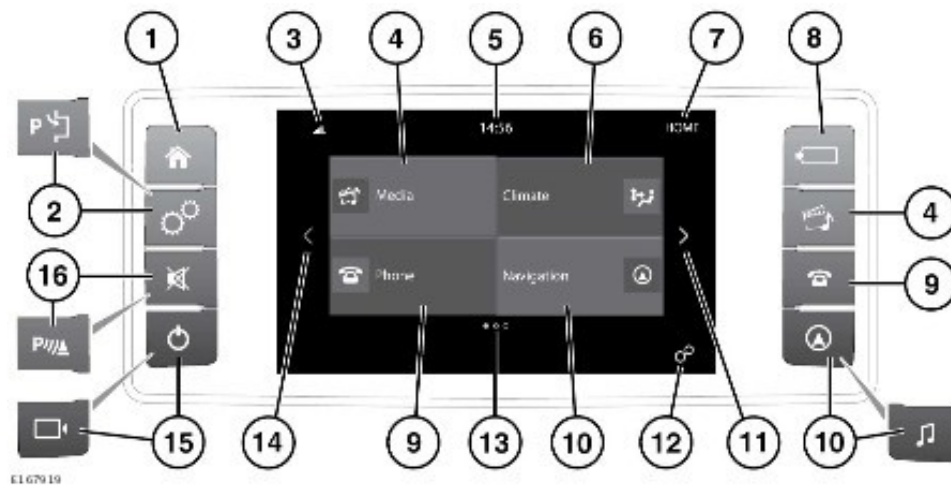
The traffic sign recognition system does not detect road markings or situations with no signage, e.g., railway crossings, etc.

### **Traffic sign recognition limitations.**

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

1. The windshield area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, fogged over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
2. Traveling in adverse weather conditions. For example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
3. Traveling in an area not covered by the navigation system.
4. Driving towards very bright lights.
5. Concealed or covered signage.
6. Non-conforming road signs.
7. Navigation information is incorrect.

### **TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS**



**Warning:**

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust, or view the system when it is safe to do so.

**Warning:**

Do not adjust the Touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving.

**Caution:**

Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery and prevent the engine from starting.

Caution:

Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

Note:

The Touch screen display and the number of screen pages vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

Note:

The Touch screen remains active until the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

1. Home button: Press to select the **HOME** screen.
2. Settings button: Press to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu, see [GENERAL SETTINGS](#).

If Park assist is fitted, then see [PARK ASSIST](#).

3. Status icons: When a phone is connected, the battery level and network signal strength is displayed.
4. Media: Touch the screen or press the button, to select the Media system. If the Media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source.

Note:

When the system is active, current information for the media being played is displayed.

5. Clock: The clock can be adjusted via the **System** option, in the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu.
6. Climate: Touch to select the **CLIMATE CONTROL** screen. See [CLIMATE CONTROL](#).
7. Screen title.
8. Media source: Touch to select the media **SOURCE** screen.
9. Phone: Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **PHONE** screen. See [TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW](#).
10. Navigation/Media settings: Touch the screen or press the button, to select the Navigation system. The current destination route, or the **NAV MENU** screen is displayed. See [THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM](#).  
  
For vehicles without navigation, press to display the **MEDIA SETTINGS** menu. See [MEDIA SETTINGS](#).
11. Right arrow: Touch the arrow or swipe the screen, to select the next screen to the right. From the **HOME** screen, this is the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#).
12. Settings icon: Touch to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu.

13. Screen indicator: Indicator for the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
14. Left arrow: Touch the arrow or swipe the screen, to select the next screen to the left.
15. Power/Camera button: Press to switch the Touch screen on/off. If Surround cameras are fitted, the Touch screen can be switched off in **EXTRA FEATURES**. See [SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM](#).
16. Mute/Parking aids button: Press to mute the sound. If Parking aids are fitted, see [USING THE PARKING AID](#).

## TOUCH SCREEN USE

### Caution:

Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

1. Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with a fingertip.
2. Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
3. Swipe: Move a fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
4. Drag: Touch an object and move it with a fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.

## TOUCH SCREEN CARE

### Caution:

Do not use abrasive cleaners on the touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## GENERAL SETTINGS

This is the setting list that are displayed, when the **Settings** icon is touched on the touch screen. Touch to display the list of settings for the required system:

1. **System.**
2. **Display.**
3. **Media.**
4. **Bluetooth.**
5. **Phone.**

**6. Navigation.**

**7. Wi-Fi.**

**8. Climate.**

Note:

The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

## SYSTEM SETTINGS

These are the **System** categories that are displayed, when it is selected from the general settings menu screen. Touch to display the list of settings for the required system:

**1. Language.**

**2. Time & Date.**

**3. Volume settings.**

**4. Unit of measurement: Miles or Kilometers.**

**5. Automatic show InControl:** Automatically launches InControl apps when a smartphone is plugged into the USB port.

**6. Beep.**

**7. Animations.**

**8. Automatic text scrolling.**

**9. Screensaver.**

**10. Dynamic Home Menu.**

**11. Delete all personal data.**

Note:

The list varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

## SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the luggage compartment. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses.

Each time Valet mode is used, a Personal Identification Number (PIN) must be entered.

To select Valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet** in **EXTRA FEATURES**.

2. Enter a memorable 4-digit PIN. You are prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, select **Delete**. If the PIN is canceled, or incorrectly entered, you are prompted to enter the PIN again.

3. **Valet mode activated** is displayed, to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

The luggage compartment is now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet mode On** screen is displayed.

## DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect Valet mode:

1. When you re-enter the vehicle, select **Valet** in **EXTRA FEATURES**.

2. Enter your memorable 4-digit PIN and touch the **OK** soft key.

**Valet mode deactivated** is displayed, to indicate that the PIN has been accepted.

1. The luggage compartment returns to the previously set security requirement.

2. The Touch screen is enabled.

Note:

If the PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## EXTRA FEATURES

This allows extra features to be enabled and disabled or the settings adjusted. Touch the required extra feature to display that feature's information or settings screen:

1. **Cameras**.

2. **ECO Data**: The ECO data system is designed to help the driver maximize fuel economy by providing on-screen vehicle data.

3. **Valet**.

4. **Ambient lighting**.

5. **Wi-Fi hotspot**.

6. **Screen off**.

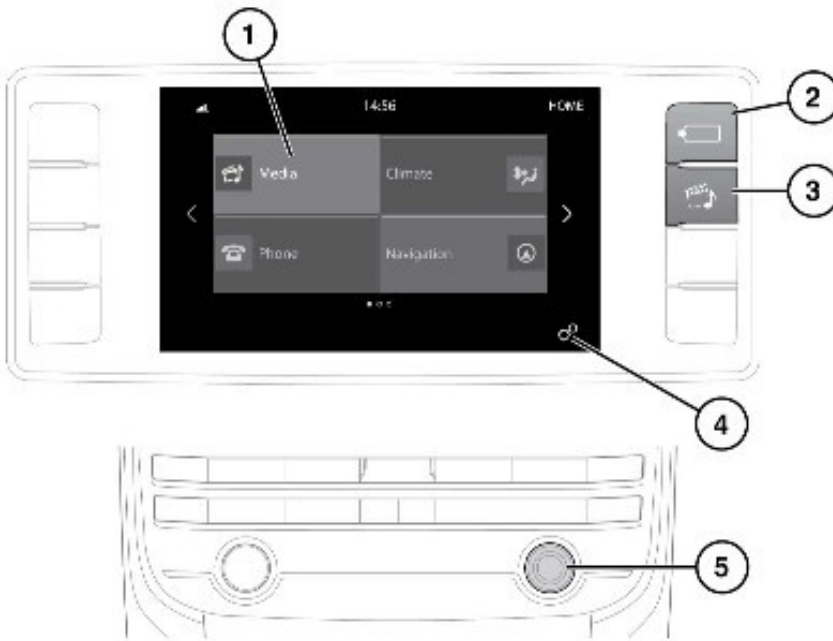
7. **ASI Suite**: (All Surface Information) Allows the low friction launch to be enabled/disabled.

8. **Deployable Side Steps**.

Note:

The number of extra features varies, depending on the specification of the vehicle.

## MEDIA CONTROLS



E17 785 G

### Warning:

Do not adjust the touch screen controls or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

### Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.

### Warning:

Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **Media:** Touch to select the media system or if the media system is already switched on, touch to select the current media source.
2. Media source button: Press to select the media **SOURCE** list. Touch the required media source from the list:
  - FM Radio.**
  - AM Radio.**
  - SAT Radio.**
  - Bluetooth\*.**
  - USB\*.**
  - iPod\*.**
  - AUX.**

Note:

\*Only a connected portable media or **Bluetooth®** device appears on the source list. Therefore, before selecting a device, the source media device has to be connected or paired (via **Bluetooth**) to the vehicle.

3. Media button: Press to select the media system.
4. Settings icon: Touch to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu, followed by **Media**, to view the **MEDIA SETTINGS** screen. See [MEDIA SETTINGS](#).
5. Power/volume control:

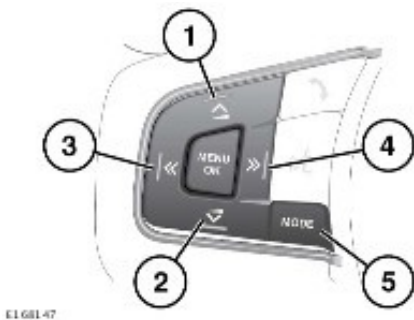
Press to switch the Media system on/off.

Note:

The media system operates with the ignition on or off, but switches off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the media system on again, if required.

Rotate to adjust the volume level.

## AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Volume up: Press to increase the volume for any source.
2. Volume down: Press to decrease the volume for any source.
3. Seek down: Press to seek down to the previous radio station or to select the previous track on the chosen media source.
4. Seek up: Press to seek up to the next radio station or to select the next track on the chosen media source.
5. **MODE**: Press repeatedly to scroll through all of the available or connected media sources.

## MEDIA SETTINGS

To view the **MEDIA SETTINGS** menu, select **Media** from the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu.

The **MEDIA SETTINGS** menu contains the following options:



1. **Traffic Announcement:** Switch on or off.
2. **Sound:** Select to view the **SOUND SETTINGS**.
3. **Radio:** These setting options are dependent on the radio source selected. See [AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS](#) or [SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS](#).

#### SOUND SETTINGS:

To adjust the **Balance/Fader** settings:



Front.



Left.



Right.



Rear.



Home point.



Sound focal point.

Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic and release. To return to the default setting, touch the home point.

To adjust the **Bass/Mid/Treble** settings:

1. Touch + or - to adjust the **Bass**, **Mid** or **Treble** levels. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag or touch anywhere on the bar and release.

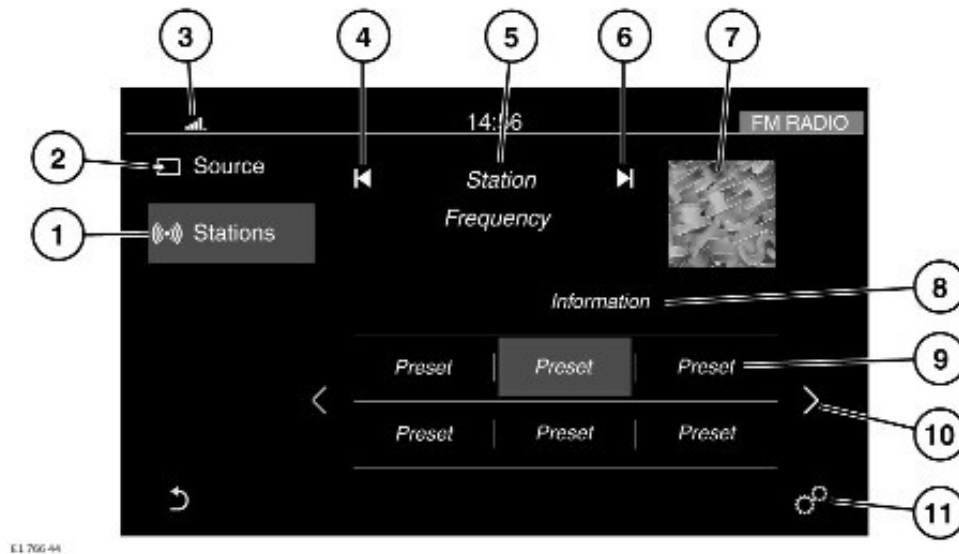
To switch between **Balance/Fader** and **Bass/Mid/Treble** settings:



1. Touch the icon to move from the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen to the **Balance/Fader** screen.
2. Touch the icon to move from the **Balance/Fader** screen to the **Bass/Mid/Treble** screen.

To adjust the **Speed Dependent Volume**, select from the following options: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, or **High**.

## AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



1. **Stations:** Touch to select the station list for the chosen radio source.
2. **Source:** Touch to select the media source list. See [MEDIA CONTROLS](#).
3. **Status icons:** When a phone is connected, the battery level and network signal strength is displayed.
4. **Seek down:** Touch to auto-seek down the frequency to the previous radio station.

The seek down button on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the previous radio station.

Note:

In some markets, extra options are available to enable manual tuning.

5. The selected station name and frequency.
6. **Seek up:** Touch to auto-seek up the frequency to the next radio station. The seek up button on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the next radio station.

Note: In some markets, extra options are available to enable manual tuning.

7. Waveband image (if available).

8. Information from the selected station.

9. Station presets:

Touch to tune to the station stored to the preset.

Touch and hold to store the current station to the preset.

10. Preset arrows: Touch to scroll through the preset stations.

11. Settings icon: Touch to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:

**Manual tune.**

**Radiotext** (FM only).

**HD Radio.**

Note:

Settings options may vary, depending on the market.

## HD RADIO™ CONTROLS

HD Radio™ systems provide digital radio broadcasts on AM/FM radio, alongside the analog radio signals. The HD Radio Technology is capable of providing improved audio quality, compared to the analog broadcast.

HD Radio operates in a very similar way to the standard AM/FM system. For information on storing stations, waveband selection, etc., see [AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS](#).

When an HD Radio signal is detected and received, the tuner gradually blends automatically between the analog and the digital audio.

The HD Radio digital signal is transmitted at the same frequency as the analog signal and can also provide extra multicast channel services, where available.

In areas of poor reception, due to signal masking and transmitter strengths, the HD Radio system may switch between the HD Radio primary signal and the corresponding analog broadcast more frequently. If tuned to a multicast service, the audio may mute more frequently.

Note:

During this process, a change in volume levels may be experienced. The volume matching between the analog and digital signal is dependent upon the broadcaster.

Note:

If poor reception and auto-switching becomes unacceptable, it is recommended that HD Radio is switched off, or the radio is tuned to an HD Radio service with better coverage.

The **HD Radio** feature can be switched on or off in the **Radio** settings. See [AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS](#).

HD Radio Technology is manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation. U.S. and Foreign Patents. HD Radio™ and the HD and HD Radio logo are proprietary trademarks of iBiquity Digital Corp.

Tuning to Multicast services:



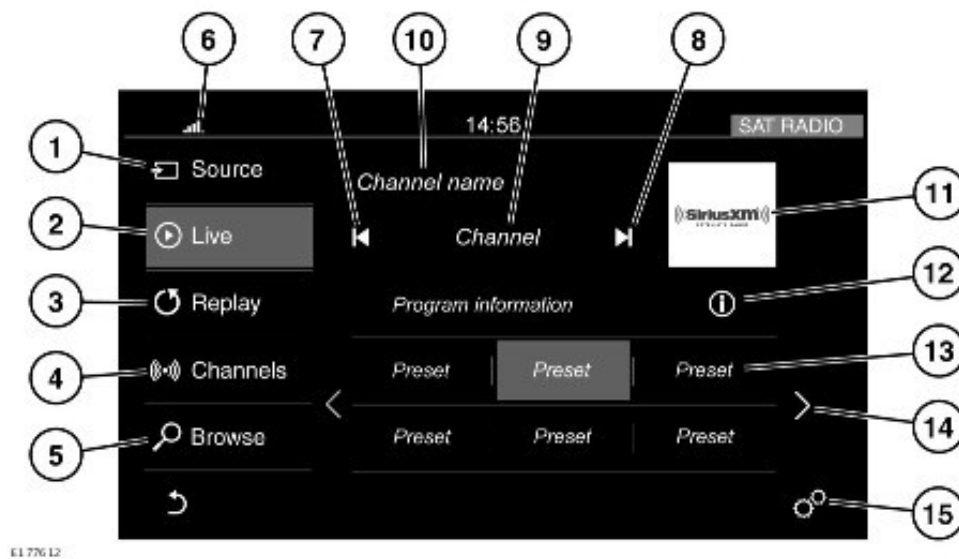
Multicast services (extra digital audio channels) can be received on HD Radio channel broadcasts.

Their availability is dependent upon the channel broadcaster. If an HD Radio signal is present, the HD Radio logo is shown. If extra multicast services are present, they are indicated as numerals next to the HD Radio logo.

To access any available multicast services, use the radio channel seek soft key. If a digital subchannel exists, this is displayed next to the HD Radio logo.

Multicast channels can be stored as presets and used as normal. When recalling a multicast preset, a short delay is experienced, during which the audio is muted.

## SATELLITE RADIO CONTROLS



1. **Source:** Touch to select the media source list.
2. **Live:** Touch to select the Live radio option and exit Replay mode.
3. **Replay:** Touch to select the Replay option and exit Live mode.
4. **Channels:** Touch to display a list of all channels.
5. **Browse:** Touch to browse through channels by genre, or select channels by entering a channel number.

6. Status icons: Showing the connected phone's network, phone battery level and network signal strength.

7. Seek down: Touch to seek down the frequency to the previous radio channel.

The seek down button on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the previous radio channel.

8. Seek up: Touch to seek up the frequency to the next radio channel.

The seek up button on the steering wheel can also be used to change to the next radio channel.

9. Selected radio channel number.

10. Channel name.

11. Channel image.

12. Channel information: Touch to view a pop-up of information broadcast by the channel. Also a song or artist can be added as a favorite.

13. Station presets:

Touch and release to tune to the radio channel stored to the preset.

Touch and hold to store the current radio channel to the preset.

14. Preset arrows: Touch the arrow to scroll through the list of preset channels (a maximum of 18 channels can be stored as presets).

15. Settings icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media** and then **Radio**, where the following features can be activated/deactivated:

**Channels.**

**Traffic & Weather.**

**Favorites.**

**Game Zone:** Selecting this feature allows your favorite sports team to be selected from a list. If there is a game being played by a favorite sports team that is currently being broadcast, then this is displayed in the list. The settings menu allows pop-up alerts to be enabled for channel details and scores.

**Subscription:** Selecting this feature gives details of how to contact SiriusXM, in order to activate the subscription radio service.

## REPLAY

This feature allows the user to review music tracks already played by the currently received radio channel. Tracks are held in an instant replay buffer, so that they can be rewound for playing.

With the radio channel playing, touch **Replay** to enter the feature.

Use the standard set of audio control soft keys to rewind, fast forward, stop, play, and pause the buffered content. The progress bar indicates the current playing position.

## SUBSCRIPTION SETUP

Satellite radio is available, free of charge, for a limited time only. Once the preview period has expired, you need to subscribe to SiriusXM.

To setup a subscription: From inside the vehicle, call SiriusXM using the displayed number. You need your payment card details and the SiriusXM ID number (also displayed on the screen).

## SATELLITE RADIO RECEPTION

Satellite radio reception is the strongest when there are clear skies.

In urban areas, terrestrial transmitters are used to enhance coverage.

## PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the cubby box. Compatible portable devices include:

1. USB mass storage devices (e.g., a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32 file format.

Note:

External hard drives are not recommended to be left in the vehicle for extended periods, as it could reduce the life of the device.

2. iPod (iPod Classic, iPod Touch, iPhone, and iPod Nano are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Shuffle functionality cannot be guaranteed).
3. Auxiliary (AUX) devices (personal audio, MP3 players, all iPods).

Note:

Auxiliary devices have no touch screen control.

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage, or **Bluetooth**® wireless technology device, use the touch screen to operate and search for the device.

Caution:

Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note:

The media system plays MP3, WMA, and AAC files.

To maximize playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB or iPod devices. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilize a minimum bit rate of 192 kb/s (a higher bit rate is strongly recommended).

Note:

iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

Note:

Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode. Only music that has been added to the device in this mode can be played.

Bluetooth® connections:

For information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth** wireless technology device, see [PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE](#).

For further information on Bluetooth wireless technology, see [BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION](#).

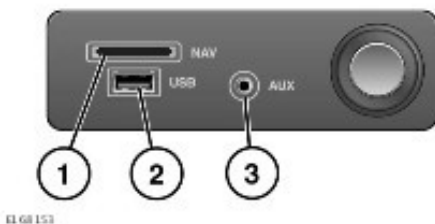
For a list of compatible **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices, please refer to the Jaguar website at: [www.jaguarusa.com](http://www.jaguarusa.com).

The **Bluetooth**® wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance varies, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not by the vehicle's warranty.

## CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE

Caution:

Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the Media system. Make sure the device is suitable and complies with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's Media system or the auxiliary device.



Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub, located in the centre console's cubby box. See [STORAGE COMPARTMENTS](#).

1. SD card slot for navigation and voice only.

Note:

The Media system does not play music or display saved images from an SD card.

2. USB socket.

3. 3.5 mm AUX socket.

Caution:

Do not connect non-media playing devices into the USB port.

Note:

Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

Note:

A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the

Media system. Note:

Devices connected to the USB ports are charged, but devices that are fully discharged do not play.

Note:

In some cases, if an iPhone is connected via a USB cable for music and also to a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device for other phone functions, the audio streams through only the last connected port. For example, if a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device is the last connection made to the iPhone and the iPod lead is connected, no audio is heard through the speakers via the iPod lead. Track title and time information is still shown on the display. Audio output from the speakers is only obtained if the user chooses **audio mode** on the **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device. To address this issue, disconnect and reconnect your device's USB cable, or open the Music application on the iPhone, select the **Bluetooth** icon and select **Dock Connector** on the pop-up.

When an iPod is connected, playback continues from the point at which it was last playing, provided the iPod battery is in a good state of charge.

Note:

Options, such as **Repeat** and **Mix**, relate to the device currently playing. They do not apply to any subsequent device.

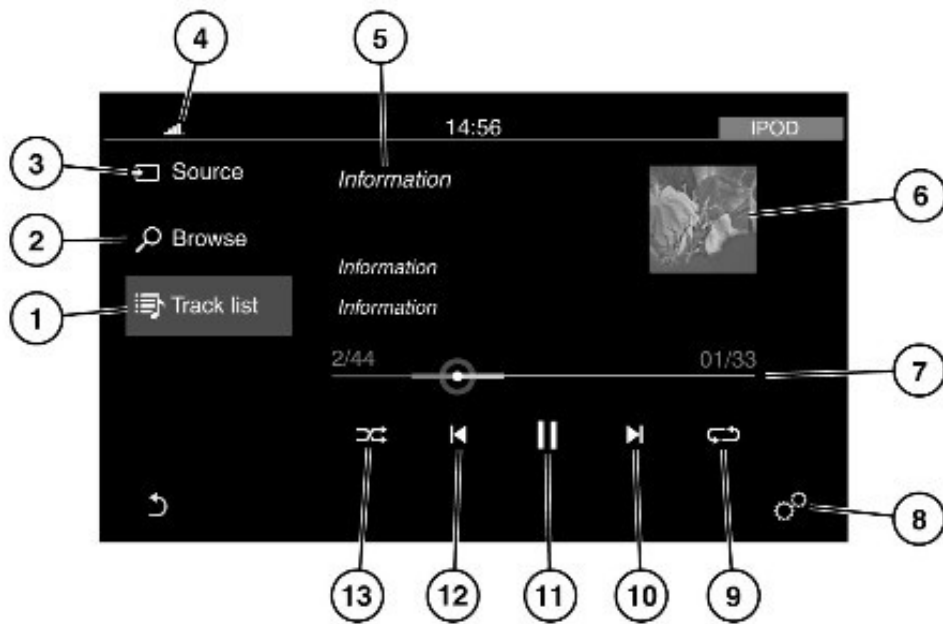
The 3.5 mm AUX socket allows extra equipment (e.g., personal stereos, MP3 player, hand-held navigation unit, etc.) to be connected to the Media system.

Note:

iPod shuffle may be connected via the AUX socket.

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS





E1.776.11

The following portable devices can be used with the Media system: **iPod**, **USB**, **AUX**, and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

Note:

Auxiliary devices have no Touch screen controls.

1. **Track list:** Touch to select the list of tracks from the connected device.
2. **Browse:** Touch to select the menu screen for the required music or audio source subject list for the connected device: **Playlists**, **Artists**, **Albums**, **Songs**, etc.
3. **Source:** Touch to select the media source menu screen.

Note:

The media source has to be connected to the vehicle before it appears in the media source list.

4. Status icons: When a phone is connected, the battery level and network signal strength is displayed.
5. Information display: Showing information relating to the music or audio being played.
6. Image display:  
If available, the album's artwork for the current track being played is displayed.  
When a video (from a connected USB source only) is played, an image is displayed.
7. Progress bar: Drag the spot or touch the line to move forwards or backwards through the track.
8. Settings icon: Touch to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Media** or **Bluetooth**, via the **Settings** option.

9. Continuous play: Touch to play the current track continuously.
10. Skip/scan forwards: Touch to skip forwards to the start of the next track, or touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes, when released.
11. Pause/play: Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback.
12. Skip/scan backwards: Touch to skip back to the beginning of the current track being played, or touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track being played. Playback resumes, when released.
13. Shuffle: Touch to play random tracks from the current MP3 folder, USB folder, or iPod playlist.

## PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or an approved iPod, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

If you are using a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls are unavailable.

If you are using any portable media device via the AUX socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.

Caution:

The use of a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion is not recommended. These devices are not designed for in-vehicle use and may be damaged.

## CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

Caution:

Do not plug non-audio devices into the USB port.

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them via the **Source** list. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth** or **AUX**, to switch between modes.

The device docked first remains the active device, until you choose to change.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, playback resumes at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

Note:

You cannot use a USB hub to connect more than one USB device to the Media system.

Note:

Devices connected to the iPod and USB ports are charged, but devices that are fully discharged do not play.

## PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH DEVICE

For information on pairing and connecting a **Bluetooth®** device, see [PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE](#).

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see [BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION](#).

## LICENSING



E135227



E132539

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Dolby Digital, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



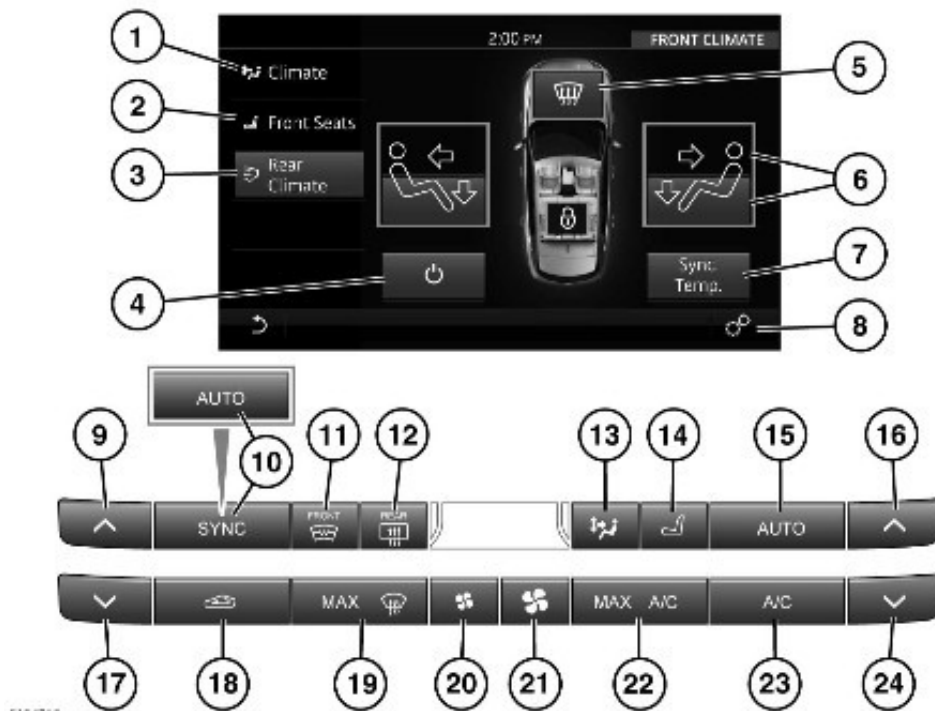
E132541



E132542

Manufactured under license, under U.S. Patent number's: 5451942, 5956674, 5974380, 5978762, 6487535 and other U.S. and worldwide patents issued and pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, and DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

## CLIMATE CONTROL



Warning:

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen, touch **Climate** on the **HOME** menu screen. See [TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS](#).

1. **Climate**: Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen.
2. **Seats**: Touch to select the **SEATS** menu screen.
3. **Rear Climate**: Touch to select the **REAR CLIMATE** settings screen.
4. **Power icon**: Touch to switch the Climate control system on/off.
5. **Windshield air distribution**: Touch to switch on/off.
6. **Air distribution**: Touch the upper (face distribution) or lower (body/feet distribution) area to select.
7. **Sync Temp.**: Select to synchronize the front and rear passenger climate settings to the driver's settings.
8. **Settings icon**: Touch to select the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu, followed by **Climate**, to view the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** screen.
9. **Temperature increase**: Press repeatedly to increase the temperature for the front left side of the vehicle.
10. **SYNC**: Press to synchronize the driver and front passenger climate zone settings. On vehicles with Rear climate control, press to select **AUTO** mode (see 15) for the left side.

11. Heated front windshield: Press to switch on/off.

12. Heated rear screen: Press to switch on/off.

Note:

13. The heated front windshield and rear screen operate only when the engine is running.

Caution:

14. Do not attach labels to the rear screen. Do not scrape or use abrasive materials to clean the inside of the rearscreen.

15. Air distribution: Press to select the desired air distribution via the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen.

16. Press to select the Heated/Climate seat menu. See [HEATED SEATS](#) and [CLIMATE SEATS](#).

17. **AUTO** mode: Press to switch the fully automatic mode on/off. Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the various options for **AUTO** mode can be set via the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu.

18. Temperature increase: Press repeatedly to increase the temperature for the front right side of the vehicle.

19. Temperature decrease: Press repeatedly to decrease the temperature for the front left side of the vehicle.

20. Recirculation: Press for timed recirculation (timed recirculation operates for 4 minutes) or press and hold for continuous recirculation. Press again to switch off.

21. Note:

22. Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to fog.

23. Maximum defrost: Press to switch maximum defrost for the windshield on/off.

24. Blower decrease: Press to decrease the blower speed.

25. Blower increase: Press to increase the blower speed.

26. **MAX A/C**: Press to switch the maximum air conditioning (A/C) mode on/off.

27. **A/C**: Press to switch the air conditioning (A/C) system on/off.

28. Temperature decrease: Press repeatedly to decrease the temperature for the front right side of the vehicle.

Note:

Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminate to confirm selection.

Cooled Glovebox:



The glovebox temperature can be controlled using the vent located in the glovebox. Rotate counter-clockwise to open, or clockwise to close the vent.

Note:

The glovebox temperature can only be reduced if the engine is running and the Air Conditioning (A/C) is switched on.

## CLIMATE SETTINGS

To view the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu, select **Climate** from the **GENERAL SETTINGS** menu. See [CLIMATE CONTROL](#).

1. **Auto Sensitivity:** The air quality sensor, for automatic recirculation, can be set to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**. Select **Off** to disable automatic recirculation.
2. **Auto Power:** The blower speed for automatic operation can be set to **Low**, **Medium**, or **High**.
3. **Auto heated screens:** The automatic operation of the front heated windshield and/or the rear heated screen can be enabled/disabled.

Note:

Selection of the **ECO** driving mode may automatically alter some status and settings for these menus (dependent on previous selections). See [ECO](#).

## AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

If an air quality sensor is fitted, the Climate control system monitors exterior air pollution and selects recirculation if it reaches a predetermined level. This feature only operates when enabled in the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu. Recirculation sensitivity can also be changed in the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** menu. See [AIR QUALITY SENSOR](#).

Pressing the recirculation button does not deactivate automatic recirculation.

## AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be adjusted using the Touch screen:

1. Touch the settings icon, to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **Climate**, to view the **CLIMATE SETTINGS** screen.

2. Touch the soft keys on the screen to increase/decrease **Auto Sensitivity**.

To switch off air quality sensing, touch **Off**.

## HEATED SEATS

Note:

Seat heaters consume a large amount of battery power. They only operate when the engine is running.

Note:

If fitted, the rear Heated seats (non-climate) can only be operated by pressing the buttons located at the rear of the center console.

Press the relevant rear Heated seat button, to switch the required seat heater on at the maximum setting. The 3 LED indicators on the button illuminate.

Press a second time to set the Heated seat at the medium setting, 2 LED indicators illuminate.

Press a third time to set the Heated seat at the lowest setting, 1 LED indicator illuminates.

Press a fourth time to switch off.

## CLIMATE SEATS

Note:

The Heated/Climate seats only operate when the engine is running.

Touch the **Front seats** soft key from the **FRONT CLIMATE** menu, or press the Heated/Climate seat button.

Note:

The **FRONT SEATS** menu is displayed.

Note:

A seat icon, at the top of the Touch screen, changes color to indicate the status of the Climate seats, red for heated operation and blue for cooled operation.

Heated operation:

1. Touch the up arrow icon to switch the Climate seats on at the maximum temperature setting (3 red bars).
2. Touch the down arrow icon once or twice to reduce the temperature setting (2 and 1 red bars).
3. Touch the down arrow a third time to switch off the Climate seat.

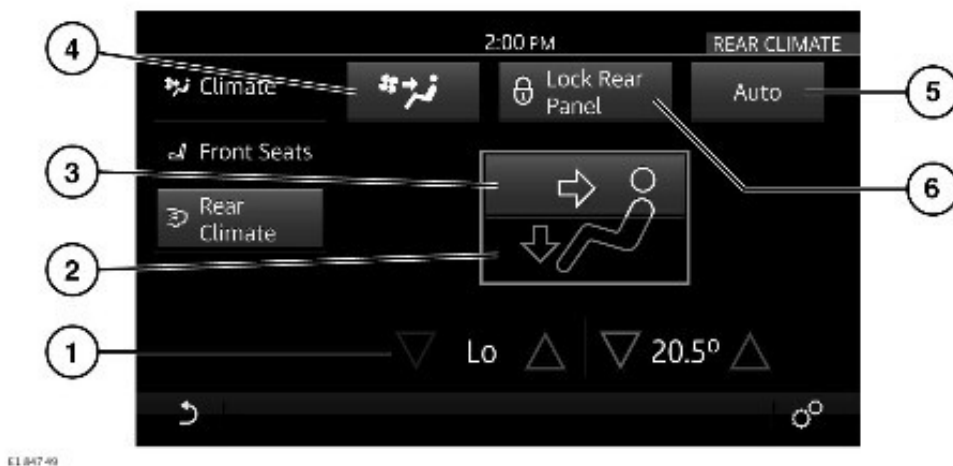
Cooled operation:

1. Touch the down arrow icon to switch the Climate seats on at the lowest temperature setting (3 blue bars).
2. Touch the up arrow icon once or twice to increase the temperature setting (2 and 1 blue bars).
3. Touch the up arrow a third time to switch off the Climate seat.

Seat zone selection:

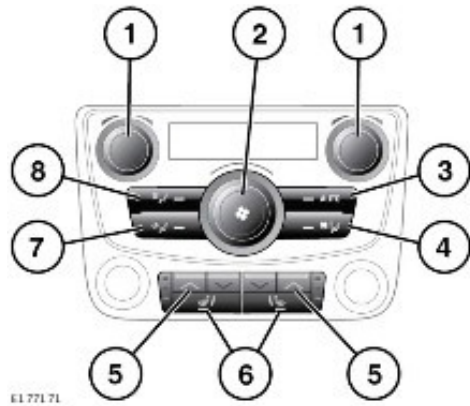
Repeated selection of the **Seat zone** soft key scrolls through the 3 choices of seat zone; full seat, cushion, or seatback only.

## REAR CLIMATE CONTROL



1. Temperature adjustment: Select the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature. The temperature setting is displayed between the arrows.
2. Air distribution to the feet: Touch to switch on/off.
3. Air distribution to the face: Touch to switch on/off.
4. **Booster**: Touch to switch the rear booster blower on/off.
5. **Auto**: Touch to switch automatic operation on/off.
6. **Lock Rear Panel**: Select to disable the Rear climate control switches, in order to prevent the rear passengers from adjusting the rear climate settings. Select again to re-enable the controls.





7. The rear climate can be set with the controls located in the rear center console.

1. Temperature controls: Rotate to adjust the temperature. The temperature is displayed on the front Touch screen, in the **REAR CLIMATE** menu.
2. Blower speed: Rotate to the adjust the blower's speed.
3. **AUTO** control: Press to switch automatic operation on/off.
4. Rear booster blower: Press to switch on/off.
5. Seat temperature controls: Press the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature.
6. Climate seat zone controls: Press to select full seat, cushion only or back only ventilation.
7. Air distribution to the feet: Press to switch on/off.
8. Air distribution to the face: Press to switch on/off.

Note:

Some of the buttons have an LED indicator lamp that illuminates to confirm selection.

Note:

In addition to the selectable controls, the **REAR CLIMATE** screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.

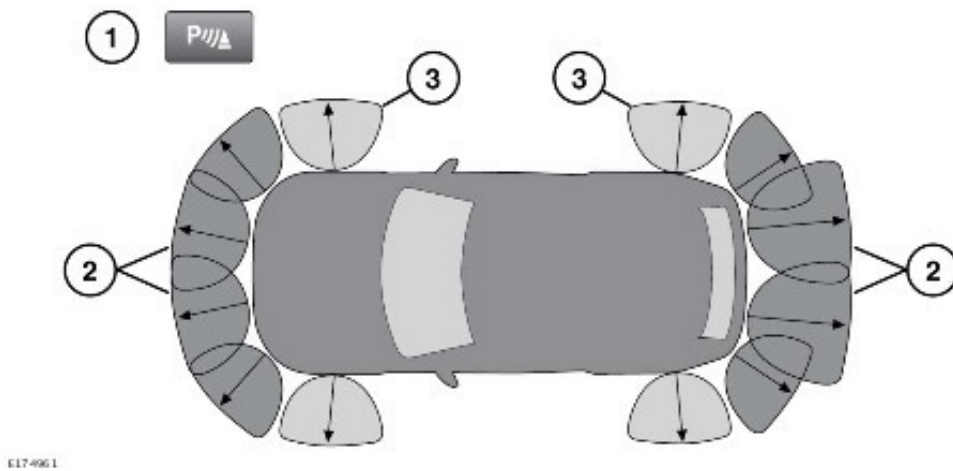
Note:

If the Climate control system is switched off, pressing the rear **AUTO** button switches the Climate control system on.

Note:

If the system is in Defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.

## USING THE PARKING AID



1. Parking aid switch. Located next to the touch screen.
2. Parking aid sensor detection zones.
3. 360° PDC (Park Distance Control) sensor detection zones.

#### Warning:

Parking aid and 360° PDC sensors do not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when maneuvering.

#### Caution:

The parking aid and 360° PDC sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground. Objects above sensor level may not be detected, for example, when approaching a flatbed truck, the protruding part of the flatbed will not be detected.

#### Caution:

If accessories are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors indicate only the distance from the bumper to the obstacle, or accessory, if it is detected.

#### Note:

If a trailer is connected to a Jaguar Land Rover approved trailer socket, the rear sensors are disabled.

The parking aid and 360° PDC systems assist the driver while maneuvering the vehicle at low speed in confined spaces. When active, object tracking along the front, side, and rear of the vehicle displays on the touch screen. The four side sensors provide the 360° PDC monitoring along the vehicle sides, creating a virtual detection zone. While the vehicle is passing an object that is within sensor range, the vehicle's integrated systems calculate its trajectory within the 360° PDC monitored area, and displays it on the touch screen.

When objects are detected, the system emits a warning tone, which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to an object. The tone becomes continuous when the object is within 12 in (300 mm) of the vehicle.

While the vehicle is stationary, the sensors do not detect objects/people approaching from the side. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects/persons. In both of these situations, ! displays on the touch screen in these virtual detection zones.

Note:

At vehicle start-up, the front sensors may not detect low objects, even if they were detected during the original parking maneuver.

The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a 4 ft (1.2 m) area around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a 6 ft (1.8 m) area at the rear of the vehicle.

The parking aid and 360° PDC system automatically activates when Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.

While the system is active and a forward gear is subsequently selected, the sensors remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 10 mph (16 km/h), at which point the system disables.

Note:

To manually enable the front and side sensors in a forward direction, press the parking aid switch. The LED lamp illuminates to confirm. Press the switch again to disable. The LED lamp extinguishes to confirm.

Note:

The parking aid system disables if the vehicle's speed exceeds 10 mph (16 km/h).

Note:

The sensors must be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance. See [SENSORS AND CAMERAS](#).

## PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, a long high-pitched tone is emitted and the switch indicator flashes. Also a graphic and the message **Parking Aid is not available. Please consult your dealer** is displayed on the touch screen. Contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer as soon as possible.

## REAR CAMERA

Warning:

It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.

Caution:

Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle, may not be detected by the camera.

Caution:

The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications.

The Rear camera, located above the rear license plate, provides a rear-view image to assist in reversing the vehicle.



When Reverse (**R**) gear is selected, the Touch screen automatically displays a wide-angle, color image from the rear of the vehicle.

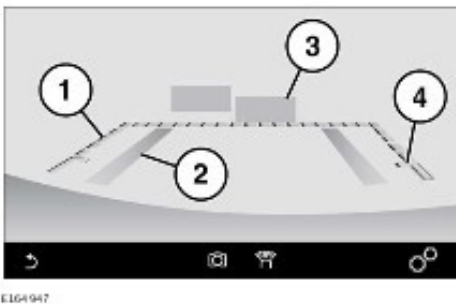
Note:

Vehicles with a Surround camera system can also split the screen's rear-view image, to also display a 360° view. See [TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS](#).

The Rear camera provides a rear-view image to assist in reversing the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing guide lines and an indication of which sensors are active.

Note:

The Rear camera display has priority over the Parking aids display. To cancel the Rear camera display at any time, press the **Home menu** button or touch the back soft key.



1. Dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including the exterior mirrors).
2. Solid line: The projected path, based on the current steering wheel position.
3. Parking sensor activation: A colored area appears, to indicate which rear sensor(s) has been activated.
4. Luggage compartment access guide line: Do not reverse beyond this point if access is required for the luggage area

Note:

The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.

To adjust the Rear camera settings while in Reverse (**R**) gear, touch anywhere on the Touch screen to display the user options.

Note:

The user options menu/icon selection differs for vehicles with a Rear camera only system, or a Surround Camera system.

For vehicles fitted with only a Rear camera, touch one of the user options, followed by the back icon:

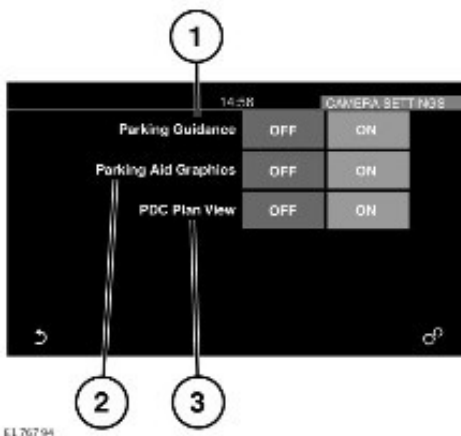


Touch to enable/disable the Park assist guidance lines.



Touch to enable/disable the sensor/s active graphics.

For vehicles fitted with a Surround camera system:



1. **Parking Guidance:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
2. **Parking Aid Graphics:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
3. **PDC Plan View:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.

The Rear camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue when either of the following apply:

1. A forward gear is selected for longer than five seconds.
2. A forward gear is selected and/or the vehicle's speed is greater than 11 mph (18 km/h).

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION

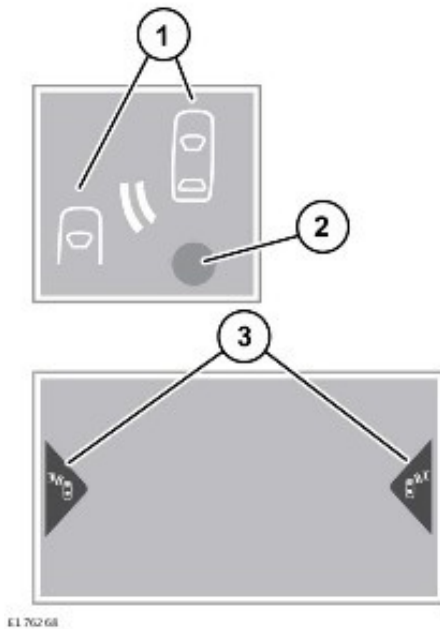
## Warning:

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.

## Note:

RTD is automatically disabled when park assist is active.

In addition to the functionality provided by the rear camera, the RTD system provides a warning to the driver of any moving vehicle, at either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing maneuver.



1. The amber warning icon flashes in the relevant exterior mirror and an audible warning tone is emitted to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle.
2. When RTD is disabled, an amber dot displays in both exterior mirrors.
3. The rear camera screen, or the parking aid screen, displays a warning icon on the relevant side(s) of the screen.

To switch between the rear camera and the parking aid screen, touch the camera image or the **Cameras** icon, accordingly.

The system can be enabled or disabled via the instrument panel menus. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

## REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION SENSORS

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system automatically disables if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot illuminates in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** appears in the message center.

Check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud, and dirt.

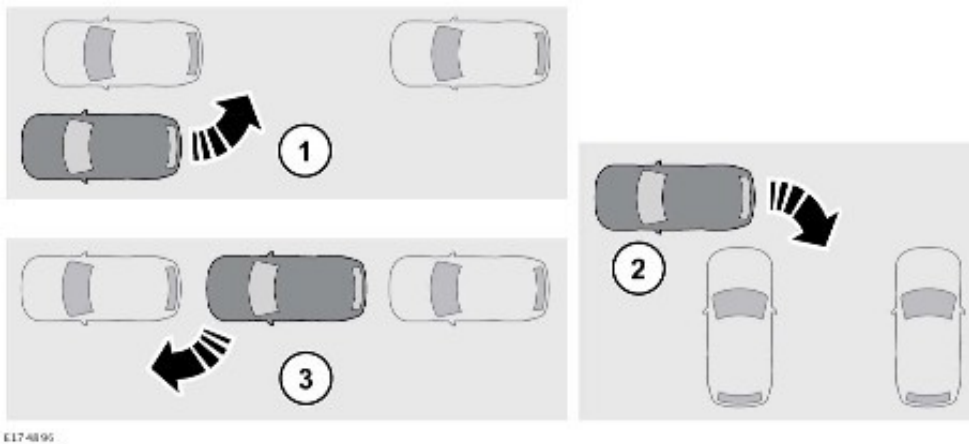
If a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot illuminates in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** displays in the message center.

Note:

Even if the detected fault affects the radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system operates correctly once the engine is switched off and then on again.

If a fault occurs, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## PARK ASSIST



Park assist is an aid to maneuvering the vehicle in and out of parking spaces and parking bays. Park assist takes control of the vehicle's steering system to maneuver the vehicle.

Caution:

The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brakes throughout any Park assist maneuver.

Note:

A Park assist maneuver can be canceled, at any point, by holding/turning the steering wheel, or by pressing the Park assist button.

Park assist comprises three different features:

1. **Parallel parking:** For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. **Perpendicular parking:** For reversing into a parking space that is at a 90° angle to the vehicle.
3. **Parking exit:** For exiting a parallel parking space.

All Park assist instructions are displayed in the Message center.

### Warning:

Park assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when maneuvering, and always use your mirrors.

### Warning:

Park assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking maneuvers.

### Caution:

Park assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example, narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, mesh fences and, in some circumstances, bicycles or motorbikes parked alongside the curb.

### Caution:

All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, for example, leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost, or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.

### Caution:

Park assist must not be used if any of the following conditions exist:

- A temporary spare wheel is in use.
- A sensor is damaged, or the bumper is damaged sufficiently enough to affect a sensor mounting point.
- A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, for example, bumper covers, a bicycle rack, a trailer, or stickers.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

### Note:

All of the doors and the tailgate must be securely closed when using Park assist.

### Note:

During any Park assist maneuver, the Parking aid system will remain active, and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.

## SELECTING PARK ASSIST



The park assist button is located alongside the touch screen. A short press of the button switches the system on and the button LED illuminates.

Use the park assist button to scroll through the three park assist features:



1. A first press switches the system on and selects **Parallel Park**.
2. A second press selects **Perpendicular Park**.
3. A third press selects **Parking exit**.
4. A fourth press switches the system off and extinguishes the LED.

The selected feature's name displays in the message center. Follow the instructions and alerts shown in the message center to complete the required maneuver.

## USING PARK ASSIST

For assistance when parking, select **Parallel Park** or **Perpendicular Park**.

As the vehicle is driven forwards, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

Note:

For park assist to search effectively, maintain a distance of 1.6 ft to 4.9 ft (0.5 m to 1.5 m) between the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles or obstacles between which you wish to park.

Note:

When first activated, park assist searches for a space on the passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction (using the turn signals).

Note:

The park assist auto-searching feature activates when the vehicle's speed is less than 18 mph (30 km/h). When park assist is selected, a space may already have been detected by the auto-searching feature. An appropriate message displays in the message center.

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message displays in the message center.

Note:

If park assist senses that other vehicles are too close, on either side, to perform a parking maneuver, a detected space is rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch park assist off and attempt the maneuver manually.

For assistance in exiting a parking space, select **Parking exit**.

For **Parking exit** to operate correctly, your vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

1. Parked in front of your vehicle.
2. Parked in front and behind your vehicle.

Note:

The **Parking exit** feature operates only when your vehicle has been parallel parked. **Parking exit** does not maneuver your vehicle from a perpendicular parking space.

Caution:

Do not perform a parking exit maneuver until the message **Drive forward with care** is displayed in the message center.

For all three park assist features, follow the instructions in the message center until the parking or exiting maneuver is complete.

Caution:

Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting maneuver, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout.

Note:

If the vehicle's speed exceeds 3 mph (6 km/h) during the maneuver, park assist displays the message, **Overspeed (Reduce Speed)**, until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 3 mph (6 km/h). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 4 mph (7 km/h), park assist deactivates.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone sounds and a message displays in the message center. Consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Warning:

Park assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. It is the driver's responsibility, at all times, to make sure that reversing maneuvers are carried out safely.

Park assist may provide inaccurate results if:

1. The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
2. There is an irregular curb alongside the parking space, or the curb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
3. The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
4. The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.
5. The vehicle has been fitted with non-approved wheels or tires.
6. One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flat-bed truck, snow plough or cherry picker.
7. The parking space is located on a corner or curve.
8. The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice or snow.

9. The weather is foggy, raining or snowing.
10. The road surface is bumpy such as gravel.
11. It encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
12. It encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
13. It encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.

## PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Park assist is not searching for a parking space:

1. The system may not be activated.
2. The vehicle may be traveling above 18 mph (30 km/h).
3. The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.

Park assist does not offer a certain parking space:

1. The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.
2. The space may not be large enough or there may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the maneuver.
3. The vehicle may have been driven more than 5 ft (1.5 m) from the row of parked vehicles.
4. The vehicle may have been driven within 16 in (41 cm) to the row of parked vehicles.
5. The vehicle may have been driven in Reverse (**R**). Park Assist searches for a parking space only when the vehicle is in Drive (**D**).
6. The approach angle may not be suitable.

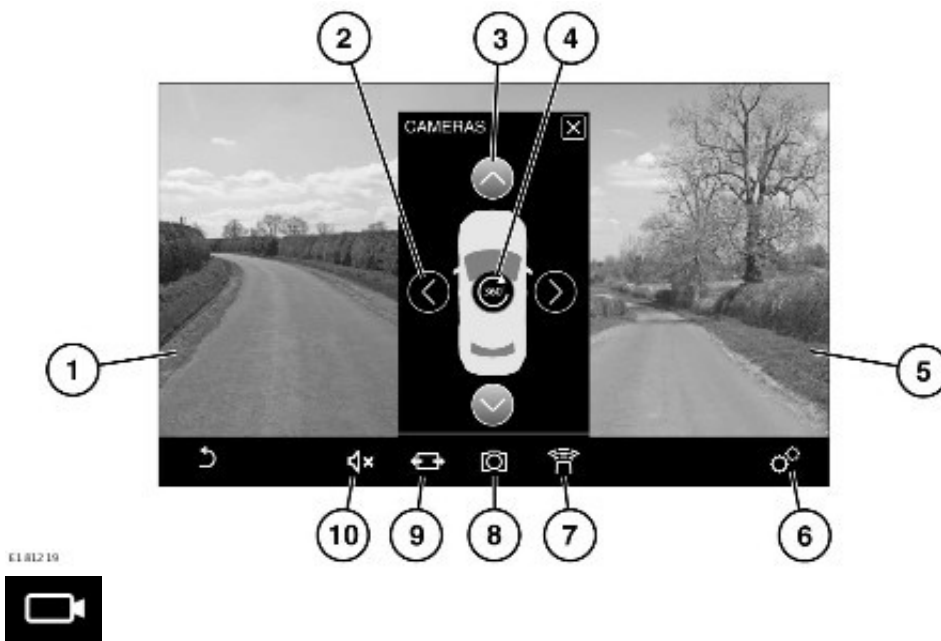
Park assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space:

1. One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See [PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS](#).

## SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM

Warning:

It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when maneuvering the vehicle.



To switch on the surround camera system, press the button on the touch screen surround. Alternatively, select **EXTRA FEATURES** on the **HOME** menu, then **Cameras**. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#).

1. Left-side, split screen image.
2. Camera selection arrow.
3. Camera selection arrow (highlighted when selected).
4. Birds-eye view: Touch to display a 360° plan view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings, using all four cameras.
5. Right-side, split screen image.
6. Touch to select the **CAMERA SETTINGS** menu.

**Parking Aid Guidance:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.

**Parking Guidance Graphics:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.

**360° PDC plan View:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.

7. Touch to select **Parking aid**. See [USING THE PARKING AID](#).
8. Touch to select **Surround cameras**. A maximum of two views can be displayed at one time (instead of the 360° view). To change a camera view if two views are selected, one of the views has to be deselected first.
9. Touch to enlarge to full screen or a wider view image.
10. Touch to mute the volume of the parking beeps.

The four cameras that are used for the surround camera system are located in the center of the front

grille, above the rear license plate, and underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.

Note:

Make sure that these areas are kept clean and free from obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.

Camera shortcuts:

The function of the surround camera button on the touch screen surround varies, depending on the selected gear and the vehicle's road speed, and gives the following options:

1. When in Reverse (**R**):

Press once to select the **Rear Junction** view. Press twice to select the **Front Intersection View**.

Press a third time to return to the **Rear Junction** view.

2. When in a forward gear, at speeds below 6 mph (10 km/h):

Press once to select the **Front Intersection View**.

Press twice to select the **Rear Junction** view.

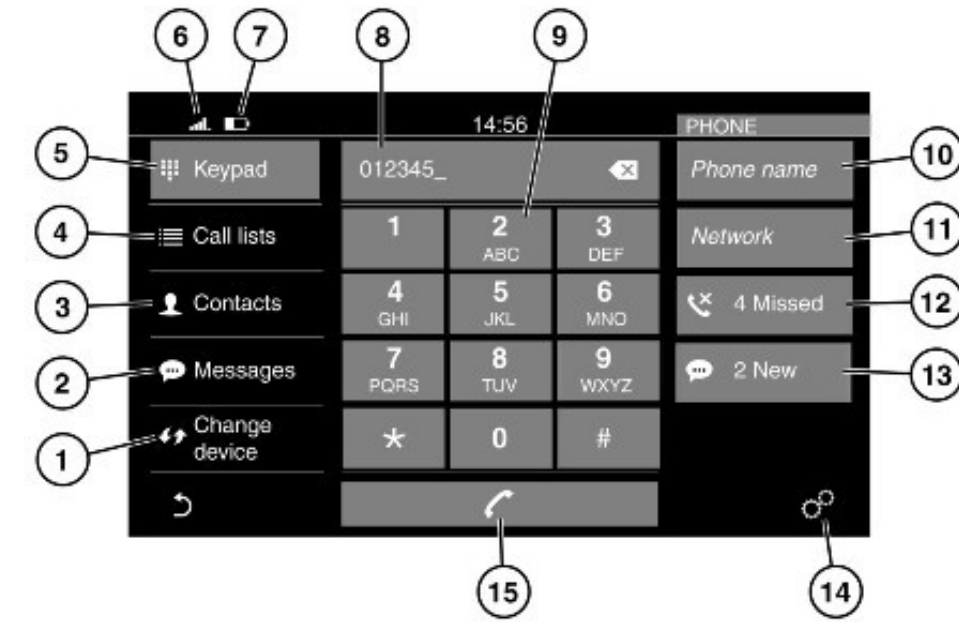
Press a third time to return to the **Front Intersection View**.

3. When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):

4. Press once to select the **Birds-eye View**.

Press twice to select the **Front Intersection View**. Press a third time to select the **Rear Junction** view.

## TELEPHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



For information on connecting a **Bluetooth®** phone or device, see [PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE](#).

For information on cell phone compatibility, see [TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY](#).

Note:

Some of the phone system features will not operate, unless the SD card supplied for the vehicle is inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See [CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE](#).

1. **Change device:** Touch to search for a new, or change to another paired phone or device.
2. **Messages:** Touch to select the Messages inbox, or to create a new message.
3. **Contacts:** Touch to select the connected phone's Contacts list. Scroll through the list, or use the alphas (A-C, D-F, etc.) to find the contact more quickly.
4. **Call lists:** Touch to access the connected phone's Call lists.
5. **Keypad:** Touch to display the keypad.
6. Network signal strength icon: Indicates current location strength of signal.
7. Battery power level icon: Indicates the connected phone's remaining battery power.
8. Status display: Displays the number or contact selected.
9. Keypad: Displays after **Keypad** is selected.
10. **Phone name:** Select to display the name of the connected phone.
11. **Network:** Displays the connected phone's network provider.

12. Missed calls: Indicates any missed calls.

13. New messages: Indicates that a new message/s has been received.

14. Settings: Touch to display the **General settings** menu. Select **Phone** for the following options:

**Announce incoming messages:** Turn on/off.

**Refresh phonebook:** Select to refresh the connected phone's Phonebook.

15. Touch to make or answer a call (green button), or touch to end a call (red button).

## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



1. Press to answer an incoming call. Press to make or end a call.

2. Press to increase the volume when in a call.

3. Press to decrease the volume when in a call.

## TELEPHONE SAFETY

Warning:

Even when using the Bluetooth hands-free feature, use of your phone while you are driving is dangerous, as it diverts attention from the traffic situation. If you wish to use your phone, stop at an appropriate place where you are not endangering or inconveniencing other vehicles.

Warning:

Drivers should talk on their cell phones only when it is safe to do so and when such use will not distract the driver from the road.

Warning:

Drivers should never text message while driving. Texting while driving diverts attention from the road and can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

Switch off your phone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, garages, fuel

storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapor (such as an open vehicle hood), chemicals or metal dust. The phone could trigger an explosion, or cause a fire.

#### Warning:

The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy. The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 6 in (15 cm) is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

#### Warning:

Always stow your phone securely. In an accident, loose items can cause injury.

### CALL VOLUME

The phone call's volume is operated by the Audio system's volume control.

If the Audio system is in use when a phone call is active, the Audio system source is muted for the duration of the call.

### RECEIVING TEXT MESSAGES

When a pop-up screen appears with an incoming text message, touch the **Show** button.

A screen appears with the following options:

1. **Reply:** Touch to select a screen where a reply can be entered and sent.

Note:

This option is only available when the vehicle is stationary.

2. **Template:** Touch to select a list of replies (e.g., **Yes, No, Thank you!, I'll be arriving a little late**, etc.). Select the required reply.
3. **Read Out:** Touch for the message to be read out as an audio message.

### DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

#### Export controls:

This product contains commodities, technology or software exported from the United States in accordance with the Export Administration regulations. Diversion contrary to U.S. or Canadian law is prohibited.

#### United States of America:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:



(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note:

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Canada:

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This equipment complies with FCC/IC radiation exposure limits set forth for uncontrolled equipment and meets the FCC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines in Supplement C to OET65 and RSS-102 of the IC Radio Frequency (RF) Exposure rules. This equipment has very low levels of RF energy that is deemed to comply without Maximum Permissible Exposure (MPE) evaluation.

It is desirable that it should be installed and operated with at least 8 ins (20 cm) or more between the radiator and person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).

USA FCC ID: A269ZUA130.

Canada IC: 7008IAM2101.

Note:

Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Note:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class 8 digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation.

This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. **Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.**
2. **Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.**
3. **Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.**
4. **Consult the retailer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.**

## BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION

**Bluetooth®** is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

Note:

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc and any use of such marks by Jaguar Land Rover Limited is under license.

The Jaguar **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth®** Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP), Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP) and Message Access Profile (MAP).

Note:

HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology phone system, your **Bluetooth** wireless technology device must be paired and connected to the vehicle's system. This is achieved using one of two methods; via your phone to the vehicle (preferred method) or from the Touch screen to your phone. If one of these methods is not successful, try the other option.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the vehicle's system attempts to connect with the last connected phone.

As phones have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the media sound volume and also reduce the ventilation fan speed slightly.

## TELEPHONE COMPATIBILITY

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices, please access the Jaguar website at: **[www.jaguarusa.com/owners/manuals-guides/index.html](http://www.jaguarusa.com/owners/manuals-guides/index.html)**.

Note:

The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar vehicles. Performance varies, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage, and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar Land Rover Limited.

## PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® PHONE OR DEVICE

A paired phone or device can be connected for different uses; phone or music. Pairing is normally required only once.

When the ignition is switched on, the vehicle automatically tries to re-connect to a previously paired **Bluetooth** phone or device, if it is within range of the vehicle.

If automatic connection is not made, or to connect a new phone or device, use one of the following pairing methods:

Pairing using the phone or device (preferred method):

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the Touch screen is active.
2. Select **GENERAL SETTINGS**, then **Bluetooth**.
3. From the list, select **Make system discoverable**.
4. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth** wireless technology device connection. Using your phone or device, search for and select your vehicle's **Bluetooth** connection (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
5. A Passkey number displays on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**, or press **Pair** on the phone or device.

Pairing using the Touch screen:

1. Switch on your phone or device's **Bluetooth** wireless technology device connection. Make sure that your phone or device is in **Bluetooth** wireless technology device **discoverable mode**, sometimes referred to as **find me** mode (see your phone or device's operating instructions for more information).
2. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the Touch screen is active.
3. Select **GENERAL SETTINGS** then **Bluetooth**.
4. Select **Search for Bluetooth Devices**.
5. The system searches for a phone or device and, if found, the phone or device displays on the screen.
6. Select the required device.

If the phone or device is not found, **NO DEVICES FOUND** displays.

Note:

The phone/device list can store up to 4 entries.

7. A Passkey number displays on the phone or device. If this number matches the number on the Touch screen, touch **Yes**.

8. When a phone or device is paired, it is included in the connected device's list and on the **PHONE** screen. It also appears in the **Bluetooth, List of paired devices** section.

## CHANGING THE CONNECTED PHONE OR DEVICE

Up to 4 phones or devices can be paired with the vehicle in the same way. However, only 2 can be connected and ready for use as a phone or device at any one time (1 for phone and 1 for media).

### To connect a different paired phone to the vehicle:

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure the Touch screen is active.
2. Select **GENERAL SETTINGS**, then **Bluetooth**.
3. Select **List of Paired Devices**.
4. Touch the **Phone** soft key or the phone hard key.

From the **PHONE** menu screen, select **Change device**.

5. A menu appears. Select a paired device from the list.

## DELETING A PAIRED PHONE OR DEVICE

### To delete a phone or device from the system:

1. In **GENERAL SETTINGS**, select **Bluetooth**.
2. From the list, select **List of paired devices**.
3. Select the phone or device to be deleted.
4. From the list, select **Delete pairing**.

The phone or device is deleted from the system.

## THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

### Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and can be complemented by voice guidance, if required. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the SD card, to establish the true position of the vehicle.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus, text screens, and map displays.

Note:

The Navigation system fitted to your vehicle does not support speed camera alerts.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels and roads, under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle minimize any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation resumes once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on the screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

1. Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
2. Driving on, or beneath, elevated roads.
3. Driving between tall buildings.
4. Two roads are close and parallel.
5. The vehicle has been transported to another destination.
6. The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
7. The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

## NAVIGATION SD CARD



The Navigation SD card reader is located in the center console's cubby box. See [STORAGE COMPARTMENTS](#).

Note:

Make sure that the SD card is located correctly in the card reader before operating the Navigation system.

For updates to the Navigation system's maps, visit: [www.jaguar.com/navigation](http://www.jaguar.com/navigation), or contact a Jaguar

Retailer.

Note:

If, for any reason, the SD card is ejected while the Navigation system is in operation, locate the SD card correctly into the card reader and touch the **Retry** soft key on the Touch screen, when prompted.

## USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.

Warning:

The Navigation system is not a substitute for driving safely, with due care and attention. Drivers should not assume that a feature will correct errors in judgement when driving. It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely, and be in control of the vehicle at all times, relative to the prevailing conditions. It is also the driver's responsibility to determine the safety of the route suggested by the Navigation system. The Navigation system may not function properly in all circumstances.

Warning:

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

To access the Navigation system, press the Navigation button or touch the **Navigation** area on the **HOME** screen.

This shows the current vehicle position. Touch the navigation menu icon to display the **NAV MENU** screen.

At this point, the first time user should set up personal preferences in the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** area. These settings are applied, whenever the Navigation system is used.

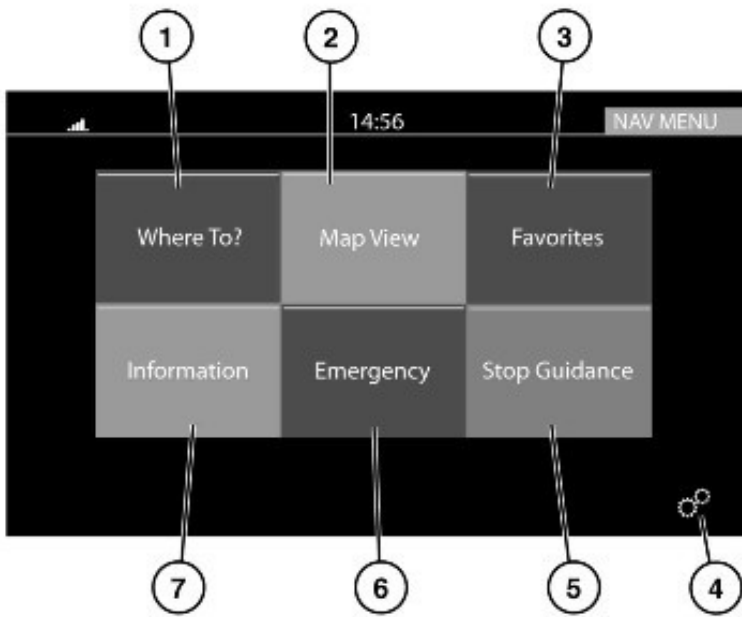
Note:

The Navigation system remains active until the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened.

## MAIN MENU



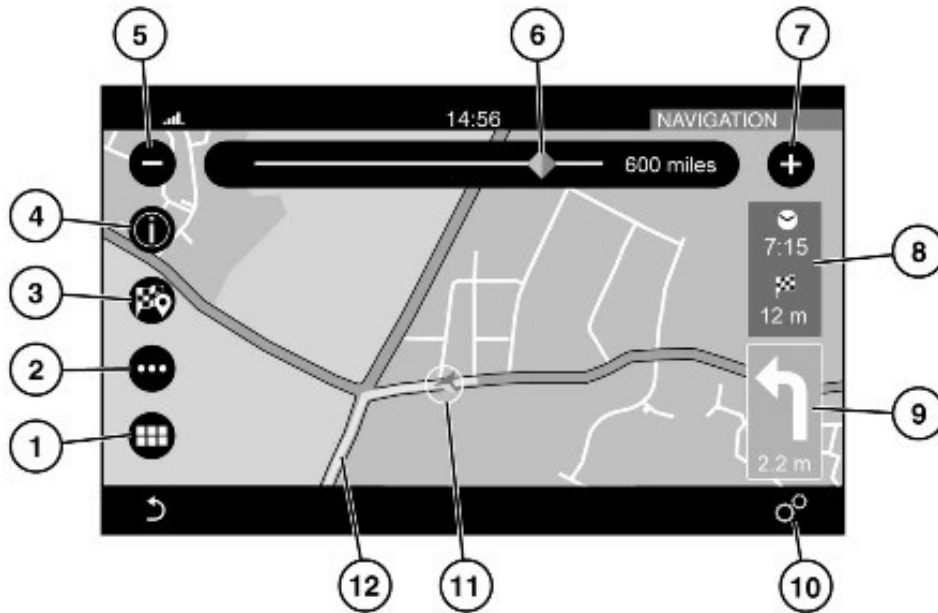
When shown, touch the navigation menu icon to access the **NAV MENU**.



1. **Where To?:** Touch for a list of options for setting a destination. See [WHERE TO?](#).
2. **Map View:** Touch to view the map screen.
3. **Favorites:** Touch to view the list of stored destinations.
4. Settings icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **Navigation**, to view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** screen. See [SETTINGS](#).
5. **Stop Guidance:** Touch to cancel the current route guidance.
6. **Emergency:** Touch to see a list of emergency services. See [EMERGENCY](#).

7. **Information:** Touch to display the following: **Traffic**, **Where Am I**, and **Trip Computer**.

## MAP SCREEN



To access the **NAVIGATION** screen, press the navigation button or touch the **Navigation** area on the Touch screen **HOME** screen. See [TOUCH SCREEN CONTROLS](#).

1. Navigation menu icon: Touch to select the **NAV MENU**. See [MAIN MENU](#).
2. Route menu icon: Touch to select the **ROUTE** menu.
3. Destination icon: Touch to set a selected destination.
4. Information icon: Touch to show information for a Point Of Interest (POI), or for traffic information.
5. Zoom out icon: Touch to zoom out.
6. Zoom scale: Drag the indicator along the scale to zoom in or out, or touch the line at the required position.
7. Zoom in icon: Touch to zoom in.
8. ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival) and remaining distance to the destination: Touch to change to the remaining time to destination.
9. Next maneuver icon: Next maneuver and the distance to the next maneuver. Touch to hear voice guidance for the next maneuver.
10. Settings icon: Touch to select the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **Navigation**, to view the **NAVIGATIONSETTINGS** screen. See [SETTINGS](#).
11. Current vehicle position and direction.
12. Route indicator.



## SETTINGS

To view the **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu: Touch the settings icon to select the **SETTINGS** pop- up menu, followed by **Navigation**.

The **NAVIGATION SETTINGS** menu contains the following options:

### 1. Speed limit

**warning.** Note:

When the Speed limit warning feature is in operation, it only registers the official speed limit for the road. It does not register any temporary speed limits (e.g., speed limits for: road works, congestion, fog, etc.). Also, speed limits shown are only accurate up to the last map update.

Note:

The Speed limit warning feature is not available on vehicles with the Traffic sign recognition system.

### 2. Guidance. See [SETTINGS - GUIDANCE](#).

### 3. POI listsorting.

### 4. GPS: Select to set the coordinate format.

### 5. Map Display Mode: Select to set **Day**, **Night**, or **Automatic** as an option.

### 6. Map View: Select **2D** or **3D**.

### 7. Orientation.

### 8. Current Street.

### 9. Auto Zoom.

### 10. Show POI Icons.

### 11. POI Icon list (only available when **Show POI Icons** is selected).

### 12. TMC incidents.

### 13. Speed and Flow.

### 14. 3D City Models.

### 15. 3D Landmarks.

### 16. Digital Terrain Model.

### 17. Park Areas.

18. **Railroads.**
19. **City Areas.**
20. **River Names.**
21. **System Information.**

## SETTINGS - GUIDANCE

Touch the **Guidance** option on the **SETTINGS** menu (see [SETTINGS](#)), to view the following options:

1. **Play Voice Guidance Prompts.**
2. **Lane Recommendation.**
3. **Junction View.**
4. **TMC RouteMode.**
5. **TMC Avoidance Types:** Select to switch the following  
**ON/OFF: Accidents.**  
**Closures.**  
**Traffic**  
**flow.**  
**Lane Restrictions.**  
**Others.**
6. **Avoid** (only available when under guidance).

## WHERE TO?

To select a destination, touch **Where To?** on the **NAV MENU** (see [MAIN MENU](#)) to view the following options:

1. **Address:** Touch to view the following  
options: **Enter Town.**  
**Enter Zip code.**  
**Enter Country.**
2. **Recent:** Select to view a list of recent destinations. Touch the required destination from the list.
3. **Point of Interest (POI):** Select to view the POI list of locations and public places.

4. **Favorites:** Select to view a list of favorite destinations.
5. **Go Home:** Select to enter the destination as a home address, or to select a preset home address destination.
6. **Intersection:** Select and enter the area required (**City, Town**, etc.) followed by 2 street names, to find an intersection destination.
7. **GEO Coordinate:** Select to enter a known GEO Coordinate as a destination.  
  
A GEO Coordinate can be obtained from a hand-held GPS receiver, a map, or the Navigation system.
8. **Point on Map:** Use to select a destination directly from the map screen. By selecting a street segment or icon, you can quickly enter a destination without the need to input the city name or street.
9. **Town Center:** Select to enter the name of a town. The Navigation system calculates a route to the center of the town entered.
10. **Closest Cities:** Select to view a list of the closest cities.
11. **Phone Number:** Select and enter a known phone number as a destination.

## POINTS OF INTEREST (POI)

To select a POI as a destination: In **Where To?** (see [WHERE TO?](#)), touch **Point of Interest** to view the following list:

1. **Change Search Area:** Touch to change the search area from the options in the following list: **Around Me**.  
  
**Near Destination** (this is only available during route guidance). **In a Town**.  
  
**Along Route** (this is only available during route guidance).
2. **All Categories.**
3. **Gas Stations.**
4. **Restaurants.**
5. **Hotels.**
6. **ATM /Banking.**
7. **Enter Name.**

When the required POI has been found, touch to select it as a destination.

## EMERGENCY

On the **NAV MENU** screen (see [MAIN MENU](#)), select **Emergency** to see the following list of emergency options:

1. **Hospital:** Search and route to a hospital close to your current location.
2. **Police:** Search and route to a police station close to your current location.
3. **Location:** Select to show details of your current location.
4. **Save:** Select to save your location as a

favorite. To search for any of the emergency services listed:

1. Select the emergency service required.
2. Use one of the following categories to find the emergency service: **Name**.  
**Distance**.
3. Select the required emergency service from the list and touch **Yes** to confirm the destination.
4. If guidance for a set destination is already active, the system asks you to select one of the following:

**Cancel previous route.**

**Add as first**

**destination. Add as**

**last destination.**

## TO SET A SELECTED DESTINATION

Once a destination has been selected, there are four options:

1. **Yes:** Select to accept the selected destination and start guidance.
2. **Options:** When calculating a route, various options can be selected.

Before accepting the requested route, touch **Options** to view the following list of options: **Fast**.

**Short**.

**Economical**.

## Route

### Alternative.

### Round Trip.

Select the required option from the list.

3. **Avoid:** When calculating a route, a road type to avoid can be set.

Before accepting the requested route, touch **Avoid** to view a list of options to avoid. Select the required option from the list.

4. **Save:** When calculating a route, the destination can be saved as a favorite.

Before accepting the requested route, touch **Save** to save the route to your **Favorites**.

## SOFT KEY ICONS

When a list of destinations is displayed, the following icons may appear:



Touch this icon to edit text or delete the destination from the list.



Touch this icon to change the order of a destination in the list. Use the up and down arrows to move the destination to the required position. Touch the icon again to register the new position.

## NAVIGATION TERMS AND CONDITIONS

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC ("Jaguar Land Rover") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. © 2014 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information. ©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

Terms and Conditions:

1. **Personal Use Only:** You agree to use this Data together with the provided Jaguar Land Rover navigation system for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.
2. **Restrictions:** Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Jaguar Land Rover, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

**Warning:**

The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

3. **No Warranty:** This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Jaguar Land Rover and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.
4. **Disclaimer of Warranty:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.
5. **Disclaimer of Liability:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

6. **Export Control:** Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.
7. **Entire Agreement:** These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Jaguar Land Rover Automotive PLC (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.
8. **Governing Law:** The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the Netherlands, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the Netherlands for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.
9. **Government End Users:** If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Notice of use:

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER) NAME:

HERE CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

c/o Nokia 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.

© 1987 - 2014 HERE - All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

USING VOICE CONTROL

Warning:

Do not allow the Phone, Navigation or Touch screen systems to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

## Warning:

In the interest of safety, only operate, view, or adjust the system when it is safe to do

so. Note:

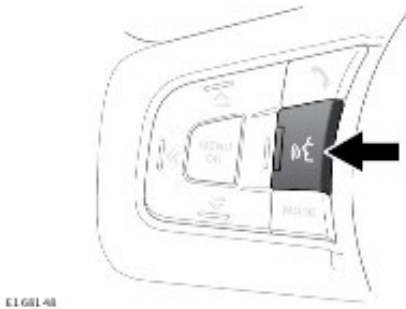
The voice control system continuously adapts to the user. This is called speaker adaptation. When a new user speaks, the first four or five commands may result in an inaccurate response. This is due to the system adapting to the new voice.

Note:

The voice control system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system is compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to a retailer/authorised repairer about testing the voice control system for compatibility with a particular accent group.

Note:

The voice control system does not operate, if the SD card supplied with the vehicle is not inserted correctly into the SD card slot. See [CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE](#).



To start a voice session, briefly press the **voice** button on the steering wheel controls. The **Command list** appears on the touch screen. To cancel a voice session, press and hold the **voice** button.

Note:

Briefly press the **voice** button during a voice session, to interrupt audible feedback. Wait for the tone to sound before giving the next command.

Command list: The list provides feedback and available commands for each stage of the voice session.



Voice symbol: Indicates that a command is available. Wait for the symbol to appear and a tone to sound before saying a command.

Note:

The commands are listed before the system is ready to listen. Wait for the voice symbol to appear, before saying a command.

Say **Cancel**, at any time, to cancel the current voice



command. Note:

All feature items listed, that can be activated by the voice control system. Can also be activated by touching the relevant command list item on the touch screen.

A list of the available features can be displayed by saying the voice command, **More Commands**. Alternatively, saying **All Commands** (or selection via the touch screen), enables visual and audible instructions to be given in a default sequential order. Starting with **Navigation Commands** and then followed by other available features.

The voice control system works with the user to display the feature lists individually. Say (or select) **Navigation Commands** or **Phone Commands**, then only the relevant commands for that feature is read out and displayed.

## NAVIGATION POI VOICE COMMANDS

To request the display of Points Of Interest (POIs), say **Find next** with one of the following POI categories:

1. **Find next (Gas station/Gas).**
2. **Find next (Parking).**
3. **Find next (Jaguar [Retailer]).**
4. **Find next (Hospital).**
5. **Find next (Golf course).**
6. **Find next (Tourist information).**
7. **Find next (Restaurant).**
8. **Find next (Shopping mall).**
9. **Find next (Hotel/Motel).**
10. **Find next** (say a Brand name) of the POI

category. Note:

The words **Find next** must be followed immediately by a category.

## INCONTROL OVERVIEW

InControl uses smartphone and in-vehicle mobile technology, to remotely connect the vehicle to a number of services and convenience features.

Note:

For further information, access the **www.jaguarusa.com** website. Select **OWNERS**, then scroll down to Jaguar InControl.

InControl features::

**1. InControl Protect:**

SOS Emergency

Call.

Optimized Assistance

Call. Stolen Vehicle

Locator.

**2. InControl Remote.**

**3. InControl Wi-Fi.**

**4. InControl Apps.**

If your Retailer has not pre-registered your account, or if you are not the first owner of the vehicle, then you will need to visit: <https://incontrol.jaguar.com/jaguar-portal-owner-web/login> to create an account. Once the InControl account has been created, follow the on-screen instructions to connect the InControl account to the vehicle and to activate the services on the vehicle.

Note:

Network connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all

locations. Note:

It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from their InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.

**INCONTROL PROTECT**

**SOS Emergency Call:**

There are two states of SOS Emergency Call: Automatic and manual operation.

In a crash situation where the air bags have deployed, an automatic emergency call is made to the emergency services. In a non-crash situation when emergency assistance is required, the emergency call button can be used manually.

In both states, the button flashes orange until the emergency services answer the call, at which point the flashing stops.

The vehicle's location, your details, and the nature of the problem is automatically taken, and the appropriate emergency services are despatched to your location. Contact with the emergency services agent can be made, at any time, by pressing the button.



The emergency call button is located in the overhead console. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

Press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services.

After use, push the button cover back into

place. Note:

If the vehicle is traveling in a different country, the SOS Emergency Call still connects, however, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent.

This feature has two back-up batteries that retain full system operation, in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled. The batteries are guaranteed for 3 years. When the batteries require replacement, **SOS Limited** displays in the message center. Consult a Retailer/ Authorized Repairer for replacement batteries.

If a fault is detected with the SOS Emergency Call feature, the message **SOS Limited** displays in the message center. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

Optimized Assistance Call:



The call button is located in the overhead console. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#).

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button is illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the assistance center. The button flashes until the assistance center answers the call, at which point the LED changes to orange. The vehicle's details and current location are automatically relayed to them.

The assistance center will send roadside assistance to your location. The agent will call back to confirm the estimated time of arrival. When the light flashes, push the button to answer the call.

After use, push the button cover back into

place. Stolen Vehicle Locator:

In the event that your vehicle is stolen:

1. First, contact the police and file a police report.
2. Contact the Stolen Vehicle Monitoring Center via the **Jaguar InControl Remote** app. Alternatively, use the phone number on the InControl website.
3. Provide the Stolen Vehicle Monitoring Center with the police report number.

The Stolen Vehicle Monitoring Center will then liaise with the police to pinpoint the exact location of your vehicle. While tracking your vehicle, access to the **Jaguar InControl Remote** app and your InControl Customer Account, is unavailable until your vehicle is recovered.

INCONTROL REMOTE

Before using InControl Remote, the **Jaguar InControl Remote** app must be downloaded to your phone from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store. iPhone and Android phones are supported.

Note:

Not all smartphones are compatible. **Jaguar InControl Remote** app is compatible with iPhone 5 running iOS7 and above and Android phones running v4.0 and above.

Warning:

In the interests of safety, operate, adjust or view the system only when it is safe to do

so. Warning:

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

1. Search for the **Jaguar InControl Remote** app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Jaguar InControl Remote** and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Jaguar InControl Remote** icon.
4. Follow the quick start guide instructions to complete the set-

up. Note:

Apple and iPhone are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the USA and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Note:

Google Play store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

The InControl Remote app allows you to communicate remotely with your vehicle, to check the vehicle's fuel level, the estimated range available, and to view trip logs, and the status of the doors and the windows. The last parked position of the vehicle can be viewed, along with directions back to that position.

The **Vehicle Status** page is the home screen for the app. From here you can move to:

1. **Security Status.**
2. **Journeys.**
3. **Assistance.**
4. **Settings.**
5. **Beep & Flash.**
6. **Remote Climate.**

## 7. Vehicle Security remote Lock and Alarm setting.

## 8. Vehicle Wake

### Up. Security Status:

The screen displays the open and closed status of all the doors and windows and the current alarm status. Journeys:

The screen displays the most recently completed trips.

Note:

This feature can be enabled or disabled via the InControl **Settings** screen.

Note:

Stored trips can be viewed, deleted, or downloaded as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.

Assistance:

The screen displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. This screen also allows for direct calls to be made to the assistance center (in the event of a breakdown) and the tracking call center (in the event of a vehicle theft).

Settings:

The screen allows the vehicle's security status, and the trip recording to be switched on or off. It also allows access to your InControl account.

Beep & Flash:

This feature locates your vehicle by flashing the vehicle's lamps and sounding the horn.

Note:

It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force regarding the use of vehicle horns.

Remote Climate:

Allows the engine to be started remotely, and to run for up to 30 minutes, to provide a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle. Press the **Engine START** button on the **Remote Climate** page and enter the preset PIN. A target temperature can be set.

Remote climate does not function if any of the following conditions exist:

1. The vehicle's fuel level is low.
2. The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
3. The vehicle is not locked.
4. A window, door, hood, or the luggage compartment is open.
5. The engine has been manually started.
6. A system error occurs with any required vehicle system.
7. A theft has been reported to the stolen vehicle monitoring center.
8. The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
9. A crash event has been detected.
10. The hazard warning lights are turned on.
11. The transmission is not in Park (**P**).
12. The brake pedal is pressed.

Note:

Some markets may prohibit the use of a remote engine start. It remains the responsibility of the driver to know if this function can legally be used.

#### Vehicle Security:

This feature allows the user to lock and unlock the vehicle remotely. If either lock or unlock cannot be performed, an error message displays on the phone screen. For added security, this function requires a PIN code to be entered.

When the vehicle is locked remotely, it secures to the maximum possible level allowed in the market in which the vehicle was intended for original sale.

Note:

If any window(s) is in an open position, the vehicle will not lock remotely. Remote closing of windows is not permitted in the USA.

When the vehicle is unlocked remotely, it relocks after 45 seconds if no door or aperture is opened. If an alarm alert is received, the vehicle's alarm can be reset from your current position.

Note:

Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, a pop-up screen appears with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the **Vehicle Security** screen.

Note:

It remains the responsibility of the driver to know the location of the vehicle and to make sure that the vehicle is secured.

#### Vehicle Wake Up:

The InControl Remote system enters a low power mode, 96 hours after the last engine stop. This is to conserve vehicle battery life. If your vehicle is parked for an extended period, for example, you are on vacation, or away on a business trip, then you can use the **Vehicle Wake Up** feature on the app. This feature wakes up the InControl Remote system on the selected date. Any date within a 30 day period can be chosen. Once **Vehicle Wake Up** is set, the InControl Remote system enters the low power mode after 60 hours. Battery power is then reserved for the wake up.

Note:

The **Vehicle Wake Up** feature cannot be set once the InControl Remote system has shut down.

#### INCONTROL WI-FI

InControl Wi-Fi Hotspot allows in-car connection to the internet using a 3G connection. It utilises the roof mounted antenna, increasing the reliability of continuous 3G connection while on the move. Better data connection strength is achieved, compared to a smartphone in the vehicle, as the metal structure of the vehicle restricts data reception.

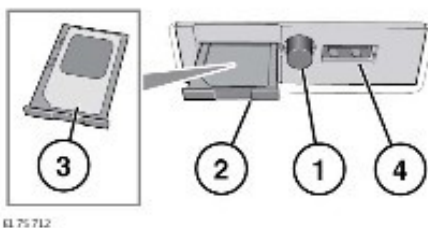
Note:

This feature requires the **Jaguar InControl Remote** app. See [INCONTROL PROTECT](#).

A 3G data only SIM card, sometimes called an Internet only SIM or Mobile broadband SIM, must be inserted into the SIM card holder. The SIM card reader utilizes a 'Mini-SIM' interface. If your SIM card is a different size, for example, 'Micro-SIM', an adaptor or replacement SIM card will be required.

Note:

If your SIM card has previously been used, and a Personal Identification Number (PIN) has been set, remove the PIN before using the SIM card in the vehicle.



The SIM card holder is located on the underside of the rear parcel shelf in the luggage compartment.

1. Press the button to release the SIM card holder.
2. Remove the holder from the SIM slot.
3. Insert the SIM card into the holder and reinsert the holder into the SIM slot. Gently push it back

to fully close.

4. The USB port is for service use only.

Caution:

Make sure the SIM card is located correctly in the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

Wi-Fi settings:

InControl Wi-Fi can be switched on/off using the Touch screen. From the **Home menu** screen, navigate to the **Extra features** menu screen/s, then select **WiFi Hotspot**. See the Touch screen section of this handbook for more information.

The **WiFi Hotspot** screen will display the Wi-Fi network ID and password. It also allows for adjustment of basic system settings. More advanced settings, including changing a security password and Access Point Name (APN) configuration, can be carried out by accessing the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu on your mobile device.

To access the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu:

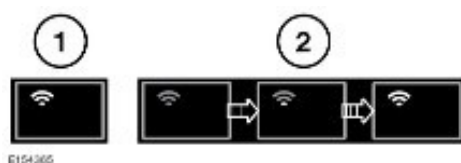
1. From the **WiFi Hotspot** screen, select **Help**.
2. The **Wi-Fi Hotspot router** address is displayed on the Touch screen. Copy this address into your mobile device's internet browser.

The **Wi-Fi Hotspot Router** menu is now displayed on your mobile device. Log in using the details displayed on the **Help** screen.

Wi-Fi icons:



1. 3G phone network connectivity.
2. 2G phone network connectivity.
3. Connecting.
4. No phone network connection.



1. Wi-Fi hotpoton.
2. Wi-Fi hotspot initializing.



## INCONTROL APPS

InControl Apps allows the use of a number of smartphone apps through the vehicle's Touch screen.

Before using InControl Apps, the **Jaguar InControl Apps** app must be downloaded to your phone from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store. iPhone and Android phones are supported.

Note:

Not all smartphones are compatible. The **Jaguar InControl Apps** app is compatible with iPhone 5 running iOS7 and above and Android phones running v4.0 and above.

Warning:

In the interests of safety, operate, adjust or view the system only when it is safe to do so.

Warning:

Do not adjust the touch screen controls, or allow the system to distract the driver, while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.

1. Search for the **Jaguar InControl Apps** app from the Apple App Store or Google Play Store.
2. From the list of results, select **Jaguar InControl Apps** and install it.
3. When the installation is complete, open the launcher and select the **Jaguar InControl Apps** icon.
4. Follow the quick start guide instructions to complete the set up.

Note:

The availability and functionality of the app depends on the specification of the vehicle and the market in which the vehicle is used.

Note:

Apps are not suitable for use while driving, for example, gaming apps do not appear on the touch screen while the vehicle is moving.

Note:

Apple and iPhone are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Note:

Google Play store is a registered trademark of Google Inc.

When subsequently selecting the **Jaguar InControl Apps** app, the **Apps** view shows two lists of compatible apps: **Not installed apps** and **Installed apps**. Apps in the **Not installed apps** list can be added at any time. Scroll to the right to see the full list. Tap the required app and install. The new app appears in the **Installed apps** list.

The **Vehicle layout** view shows how the installed apps can display on the vehicle's touch screen. The order of the apps can be adjusted here. Touch an icon and drag to the required position.

The **Options** menu gives access to a **Quick start guide**, allows the **Keyboard** to be changed to suit the preferred language, allows access to a **Navigation** feature, and includes a list of **FAQs**.

To view an app on the vehicle's touch screen, connect your phone via the USB cable, supplied with your phone, to the vehicle's USB socket located in the center console's cubby box. The touch screen **HOME** menu must be selected.

If the apps are not displayed, move to the **EXTRA FEATURES** area and select the **InControl** option, then **View** or **Bluetooth Settings**.

Make sure that the phone is paired via the **Bluetooth** wireless device connection. See [PAIRING AND CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH DEVICE](#).

## SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Warning:

Do not smoke, use an exposed flame or cause sparks while refueling. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Warning:

Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.

Warning:

Switch the engine off when refueling, as it is both a source of extreme temperatures and electrical sparks. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

When refueling, switch off any personal electronic devices such as cell phones or music players. Failure to do so may cause a fire or explosion, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

Do not overfill the fuel tank, as this may cause spillage when the vehicle is driven. Spillage may also occur if the fuel expands in high ambient temperatures.

Warning:

Only use containers specifically designed for carrying fuel and always remove them from the vehicle to fill them. Failure to do so may result in spillage and cause a fire.

Use extreme care and take appropriate safety precautions when refueling the vehicle. Make sure to read and observe all the relevant warnings listed.

## GASOLINE ENGINED VEHICLES

### Caution:

Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer. Unapproved products may be harmful to fuel system components on this vehicle.

## OCTANE RATING

### Note:

Federal law requires that gasoline octane ratings are displayed on the fuel pumps.

Vehicles with a gasoline engine require the use of premium unleaded gasoline, with a minimum octane rating of 91 AKI (Anti-Knock Index). Using the correct fuel specification helps to maintain the vehicle's performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, then use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 87 AKI. Using lower octane rated fuel may reduce the engine's performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock, and other driveability problems.

### Caution:

Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 87 AKI as severe engine damage may occur.

Consult a retailer/authorized repairer if a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even if using fuel to the recommended octane rating. Particularly if an engine knock is detected, while holding a steady speed on level roads. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, which is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.

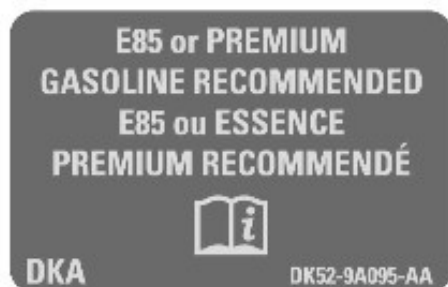
### Note:

An occasional light engine knock when accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.

### Caution:

Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes (e.g. manganese-based), or fuel additives. Doing so, may adversely affect the vehicle's exhaust emissions control systems, and may also affect the vehicle's warranty.

## ETHANOL



E1 62 395

Some vehicles are certified for use with E85 (85% ethanol content) fuel. If the vehicle can use E85 fuel,

it is stated on a label, affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.

If this vehicle does not have the label, it is only suitable for use with fuels containing up to 15% ethanol (E10 and E15).

Vehicles without the E85 label:

Caution:

This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 15% ethanol.

Caution:

Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content), as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Fuels containing up to 15% ethanol (E10 and E15) may be used.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers do not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If driveability issues are experienced, revert to fuel containing no more than 10% ethanol. If the issues remain, use premium quality unleaded fuel instead.

Vehicles with the E85 label:

Caution:

Do not use E85 fuel in ambient temperatures lower than 14°F (-10°C).

Caution:

When using E85 fuel, 1 in 4 tanks of fuel must be non-E85 premium quality unleaded fuel. Failure to do so will require more frequent servicing. If in doubt, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer. Further servicing information can also be found in the Passport to Service.

Caution:

Do not leave the vehicle in storage for 6 months or more with E85 fuel in the fuel tank. If the vehicle must remain in storage, use non-E85 premium quality unleaded fuel instead.

When using E85 fuel, an increase in fuel consumption may be experienced. This is normal and does not indicate a fault.

The engine may take longer to start in ambient temperatures below 32°F (0°C). This is normal and does not indicate a fault.

If the vehicle is frequently driven short distances or in cold weather conditions, then the engine may not reach normal operating temperature. **Engine Oil Level High** may be displayed in the Message center but this does not indicate a fault and no retailer support should be required. Drive the vehicle for approximately 40 minutes or more. If the warning message remains, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## METHANOL

Caution:

Wherever possible, avoid using fuel containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered under warranty.

## METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as Methyl Tertiary Butyl Ether (MTBE) can be used. The ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel must not exceed 15%. MTBE is an ether-based compound derived from gasoline. MTBE has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the octane rating of fuel.

## DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

### Caution:

Do not attempt to start the engine if an incorrect fuel is added to the vehicle's fuel tank. For example, gasoline instead of diesel. Contact a retailer/authorized repairer immediately.

### Caution:

The vehicle manufacturer cannot accept any responsibility for any damage caused by running the vehicle with an incorrect fuel.

Only use high quality diesel fuel. In accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials standard (ASTM) D975 Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD), or an equivalent standard.

This vehicle has the latest after-treatment systems to meet the US Low Emissions Vehicle (LEV) standards. To make sure of emissions compliance and maintain correct engine performance, only the use of ULSD fuel is recommended. In accordance with the ASTM D975 ULSD standard.

This vehicle is capable of running with up to a 5% blend of bio-diesel (B5). In accordance with the ASTM D975 standard. Using a higher blend of bio-diesel is not recommended.

Do not use any fuel additives. Do not add paraffin or gasoline to diesel fuels.

## SULFUR CONTENT

### Caution:

Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and the exhaust after-treatment system. The vehicle's warranty does not cover this. If in doubt, contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice.

Vehicles with a diesel engine require the use of Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel. In accordance with the American Society for Testing and Materials standard ASTM D975 ULSD, or the World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) standards. The fuel must also meet the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) standards.

This vehicle must be operated only with ultra low sulfur diesel fuel (that is, diesel fuel meeting EPA

specifications for highway diesel fuel, including a 15 ppm sulfur cap).

## DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

### Warning:

DEF must be kept out of the reach of children, to avoid serious injury or death.

### Warning:

Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF, to avoid injury.

### Caution:

DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.

### Caution:

DEF can smell unpleasant and stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.

### Caution:

When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. Use of the incorrect fluid can result in serious damage to the vehicle. Do not start the engine. Contact a retailer/authorised repairer immediately.

### Caution:

Do not overfill the DEF reservoir, as damage to DEF system may occur.

### Caution:

Do not use commercial vehicle DEF dispensing nozzles. The vehicle's DEF system is not designed to be refilled under these higher pressures. The flow-rate of these pumps can result in serious damage to the vehicle.

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a reservoir containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). DEF is also known as AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.

It is a legal requirement that the DEF system is used correctly, to comply with exhaust emission requirements. It may be a criminal offence to run the vehicle when it is not consuming the correct specification of DEF. Always use the correct DEF fluid specification, and the correct quantity of DEF fluid. See [LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS](#), and also see [CAPACITIES](#).

The consumption of DEF can vary greatly, it is dependent on driving style, road surface conditions, and weather conditions. The average rate of consumption is approximately 6 US pints (2.8 liters), for every 1 000 miles (1 600 kilometers).

The distance until the next DEF refill can be viewed in the message center, via the **Vehicle Information** menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

When the DEF level becomes low, a notification message displays in the message center. It is recommended to contact a retailer/authorized repairer to arrange a DEF refill, at the earliest opportunity.

The message center displays a distance countdown when the DEF level becomes too low. The DEF reservoir should be topped up before the distance range falls to zero. Failure to do so, results in the vehicle failing to start and the engine/transmission (amber) warning lamp also illuminates. See [ENGINE/TRANSMISSION \(AMBER\)](#).

If a DEF warning message appears with a red warning icon, seek qualified assistance at the earliest opportunity. These messages include system malfunctions, incorrect fluid, and fluid quality.

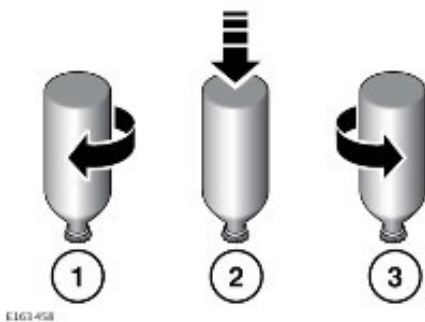
If required, DEF can be added to the reservoir by using the top-up procedure. It is recommended that a retailer/authorized repairer performs a DEF system refill, at the earliest opportunity.

Two standard-sized non-drip refill bottles, each containing 4 US pints (1.89 liters) of DEF, is the minimum amount required to restart the engine. Refill bottles are available from a retailer/authorised repairer.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF reservoir. See [FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS](#).

Turn the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.



1. Place the refill bottle over the reservoir filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the reservoir.
3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with the second refill bottle.
5. Replace the reservoir filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

Note:

In extremely low temperatures below 14°F (-10°C), DEF may freeze in the reservoir, making refilling difficult. Move the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage. Raise the ambient temperature, in

order to thaw the DEF before attempting to top up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message extinguishes.

Note:

When starting and stopping the engine, the operation of the DEF pumps may be heard, i.e., no cause for concern.

Note:

The engine/transmission (amber) warning lamp may illuminate after a refill. In this event, start the engine, run for approximately 30 seconds, and then switch off the engine. Do this three times in succession.

## REFORMULATED GASOLINE

These fuels are specially formulated to further reduce vehicle emissions. The vehicle manufacturer fully supports all efforts to protect and maintain the ambient air quality and encourages the use of reformulated gasoline, where available.

## RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Caution:

Avoid running out of fuel. Doing so can cause damage to the vehicle's engine, fuel, and emission control systems.

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 1.1 US gallons (4 L) is required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refueling, before attempting to restart the engine. The vehicle needs to be driven 1 - 3 miles (1.5 - 5 km), in order to reset the engine management and monitoring systems.



Vehicles with a diesel engine are supplied with an active misfueling device. A metal flap is visible in the fuel filler neck, when the fuel filler cap is removed. Use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle, to refill the fuel tank with a fuel can. Insert the funnel into the filler neck, fully and squarely, to open the active misfueling device. Also see [ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELING PROTECTION DEVICE](#).

Note:

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

## WATER IN FUEL

Caution:



If a water in fuel warning message displays in the message center, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel system. In this event, consult a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.

## DIESEL ENGINES

### Caution:

Running out of fuel draws air into the fuel system and may cause serious damage to the fuel injection system. In this event, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Vehicles with a diesel engine have a system that prevents the fuel tank from emptying completely. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system stops the engine.

If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. See [LOW FUEL WARNING \(AMBER\)](#).

If the system's protection function has activated, the vehicle must be refueled immediately.

A minimum of 1.1 gallons (4 L) of fuel is required to enable the engine to be restarted. After refueling, use the following procedure:

1. Press and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button and crank the engine for 5 seconds. See [DRIVER CONTROLS](#)
3. Release the **START/STOP** button.
4. With the brake pedal still pressed, press and release the **START/STOP** button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

### Note:

If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds the ignition switched on, then repeat the complete procedure.

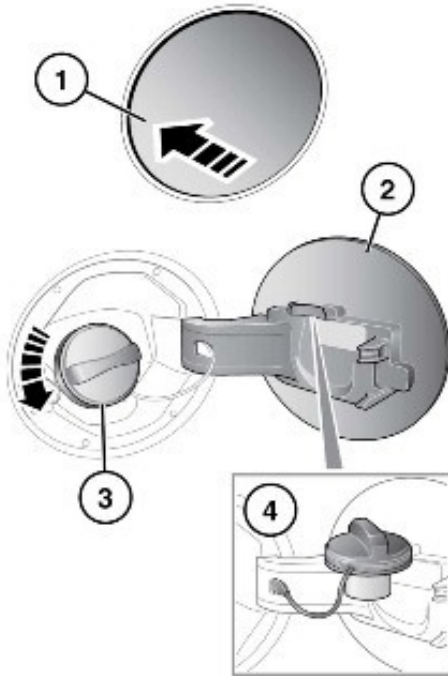
### Caution:

Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

## FUEL FILLER FLAP

### Warning:

Take note of all the warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.



E167357

1. Press and release the rear of the fuel filler flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Twist the cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Stow the cap on the lip provided on the top of the hinge arm, as shown.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

## FUEL FILLER

### Warning:

Take note of all warnings and instructions given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap. Failure to do so may result in injury or death.

### Warning:

When refueling, make sure that all of the windows, doors, and the sunroof are fully closed. Particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.

### Warning:

Do not attempt to fill the tank past its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is parked on a slope, in direct sunlight or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel can cause spillage. Potentially leading to a fire or explosion.

Caution:

Check the fuel pump information carefully, to make sure that the correct fuel is used to refuel the vehicle.

Caution:

Never leave the fuel pump nozzle unattended while refueling.

Caution:

If the vehicle is filled with the incorrect fuel, it is essential to seek qualified assistance before starting the engine.

Filling station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Fill the tank until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

## ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELING PROTECTION DEVICE



Vehicles with a diesel engine have an active misfueling protection device. A metal flap is visible in the fuel filler neck, when the fuel filler cap is removed. The active misfuelling protection device prevents the fuel tank being filled with incorrect fuel, e.g., gasoline. Automatic release occurs if a correctly sized, diesel fuel pump filler nozzle is inserted, fully and squarely, into the vehicle's fuel filler neck, as illustrated.

Note:

To refuel with a fuel can, use the emergency funnel supplied with the vehicle. See [ACTIVE DIESEL MISFUELING PROTECTION DEVICE](#).

## FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel. Never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refueling the vehicle, it may not be possible to add the maximum fuel quantity. There will be a small reserve of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. See [CAPACITIES](#).

## BREAKING-IN

The vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in, relative to each other. The process occurs mainly in the first 2 000 miles (3 000 km) of operation.

During this breaking-in period of 2 000 miles (3 000 km), observe and follow the instructions below:

1. Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
2. Avoid high engine speeds (rpm) until the engine has reached its full operating temperature.
3. Avoid laboring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.
4. Gradually increase engine and road speeds.
5. Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
6. Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
7. Preferably take longer trips.
8. Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or any similar events.

## AIR CONDITIONING

### Warning:

With reference to US legislation relating to Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerants, J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile Air Conditioning (A/C) Systems (HFO-1234yf), states that under no circumstances should any part of the A/C system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times.

### Warning:

All replacement parts for the A/C system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE Standard. Contact your Retailer/Authorized Repairer for advice.

The following symbol may be used on an under-hood label and is relevant to the refrigerant fluid.



A/C symbol.



Lubricant symbol.



Caution.



Flammable refrigerant.



Required registered technician to service A/C.

## OWNER MAINTENANCE

Caution:

Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tire wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine maintenance, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently.

## DAILY CHECKS

1. Operation of the lights, horn, turn signals, wipers, washers, and warning lights.
2. Operation of the seat belts and brakes.
3. Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the Air Conditioning (A/C) system are normal.

## WEEKLY CHECKS

1. Engine oil level.
2. Engine coolant level.
3. Brake fluid level.
4. Screen washer fluid level.
5. Tire pressures and condition.
6. Operate the Air Conditioning (A/C).

Note:

The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

## ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in extremely arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to

servicing requirements.

Arduous driving conditions include:

1. Driving in dusty and/or sandy conditions.
2. Driving on rough and/or muddy roads.
3. Frequent wading.
4. Frequent driving at high speeds in high ambient temperatures above 122 °F (50 °C).
5. Frequent driving in severe cold weather below -40 °F (-40 °C).
6. Frequent driving in mountainous conditions.
7. Frequent trailer towing.
8. Driving in areas using road salt or other corrosive materials on the driving surface.

Contact a retailer/authorized repairer for advice.

## EXHAUST FILTER

Diesel vehicles equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter, also known as regeneration, occurs automatically between approximately every 186 to 559 miles (300 to 900 km) depending on driving conditions, and requires the engine to reach normal operating temperature.

This self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 40 mph to 70 mph (60 km/h to 112 km/h). This process normally takes 10-20 minutes. It is possible for self-cleaning to occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 30 mph (50 km/h) average speed.

Exhaust filter self-cleaning:

Some driving conditions (e.g., frequently driving short distances, in slow-moving traffic, or in cold weather) may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon is displayed in the Message center, depending on status, as follows:



1. **Amber:** Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 40 mph (60 km/h) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

Note:

Failure to follow the above driving approach to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon is eventually replaced by a red exhaust filter icon, and the filter may need to be replaced.

2. **Green:** Exhaust filter self-cleaning is complete.

3. **Red:** The exhaust filter is full; contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer as soon as possible.

Note:

A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.

Note:

If diesel fuel with high sulfur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. This is the sulfur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. Only use ultra-low sulfur diesel fuel.

## ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Warning:

No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

## AIR BAG SYSTEM

Warning:

The components that make up the air bag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the air bag module. Air bags should only be repaired by an authorized repairer.

Warning:

Certain components of this vehicle, such as air bag modules and seat belt pre-tensioners, may contain perchlorate material. Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end-of-life disposal. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

To prevent malfunction of the air bag system, always consult your retailer/authorized repairer before fitting any of the following:

1. Electronic equipment such as a cell phone, 2-way radio, or audio system.
2. Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
3. Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
4. Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the air bag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, instrument or dashboard panels.
5. Any modification to the dashboard panels or steering wheel.

## PARTS AND ACCESSORIES

### Warning:

Fitting of non-approved parts and accessories, or the carrying out of non-approved alterations or conversions, may be dangerous and could affect the safety of the vehicle and occupants, and also invalidate the terms and conditions of the vehicle's warranty.

### Warning:

Jaguar Land Rover Limited will not accept any liability for death, personal injury, or damage to property, which may occur as a result of installation of non-approved accessories or the carrying out of non-approved conversions to your vehicle.

### Warning:

With reference to US legislation relating to Air Conditioning (A/C) refrigerants, J2845 Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile Air Conditioning (A/C) Systems (HFO-1234yf), states that under no circumstances should any part of the A/C system be serviced, dismantled, or replaced by anyone other than suitably qualified and certified personnel. Make sure that the refrigerant is correctly contained at all times.

### Warning:

All replacement parts for the Air Conditioning (A/C) system must be new and equivalent to the manufacturer's original equipment. All replacement parts must comply with the relevant SAE Standard. Contact your Retailer/Authorized Repairer for advice.

The following symbol may be used on an under-hood label and is relevant to the refrigerant fluid.



Extremely flammable. Chemicals that have an extremely low flash point and boiling point, and gases that catch fire when in contact with air.

## ROAD TESTING DYNAMOMETERS (ROLLING ROADS)

Any dynamometer testing should only be carried out by a qualified person, familiar with the dynamometer testing and safety procedures practiced by retailers/authorized repairers.

## SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

### Warning:

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch the engine, exhaust, and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.

### Warning:

Never leave the engine running when the vehicle is in a garage. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can



cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.

Warning:

Do not work beneath the vehicle with the wheel changing jack as the only means of support.

Warning:

The jack is designed for wheel changing only. Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of the body beneath the vehicle.

Warning:

Keep hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys, and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.

Warning:

Remove metal wristbands and jewelry, before working in the engine compartment.

Warning:

Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the ignition switched on.

Warning:

Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

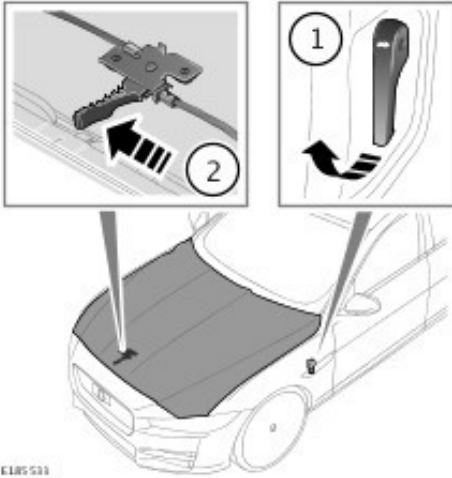
## USED ENGINE OIL

Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.



Pollution of drains, watercourses, or soil is illegal. Use authorized waste disposal sites to dispose of used oil and toxic chemicals.

## OPENING THE HOOD



1. Pull the handle, located in the left-side front footwell, to release the hood securing latch.
2. Push the safety catch lever, located below the center point of the hood and then raise the hood.

## CLOSING THE HOOD

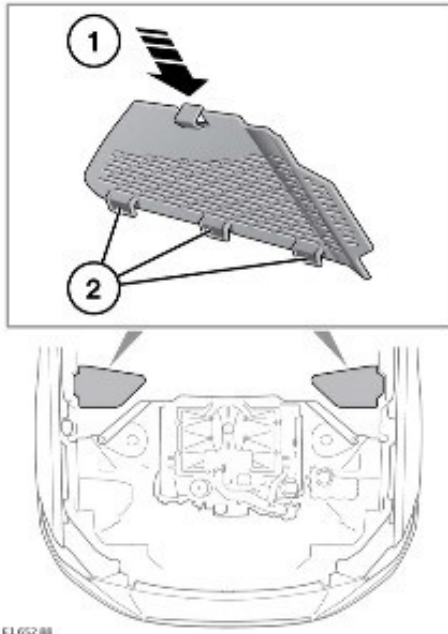
Warning:

Do not drive with the hood secured by the safety catch alone.

To close the hood:

1. Lower the hood until the safety catch engages.
2. Using both hands, press the hood down until the catches click.
3. Try to lift the front edge of the hood to check that both catches are engaged.

## UNDER HOOD COVERS - REMOVAL



Open the hood and follow the procedure:

1. Lightly push back and hold the cover's front retaining lug.
2. Lift up the cover and slide forwards to release the rear locating lugs.

## UNDER HOOD COVERS - REFITTING

Open the hood and follow the procedure:

1. Locate the cover's rear locating lugs into the vehicle's panel.
2. Lightly press down the cover to engage the front retaining lug into the vehicle's panel.

Note:

The cover should be a flush fit and aligned to the vehicle's panel.

## FUEL SYSTEM

Warning:

Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.

Warning:

Make sure sparks and open flames are kept away from the engine compartment.

Warning:

Wear protective clothing, including, where possible, gloves made from an impervious material.

## CHANGING A BULB

### Warning:

If the exterior lamps have just been switched off, give the bulbs time to cool. Handling them when hot may cause personal injury.

### Warning:

To avoid personal injury, due to any possible residual electrical current, make sure not to touch any electrical connectors or circuit boards while changing a bulb.

### Caution:

Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer for advice.

### Caution:

Before attempting a bulb change, make sure that the ignition and the affected lamp are switched off. If the circuit remains live, a short circuit can occur, which may damage the vehicle's electrical system.

### Bulb specification:

Not all bulbs are renewable. The following bulbs can be renewed:

Variant	Bulb description	Specification
Halogen headlamps	Low beam/High beam	HIR2
	Daytime running lamp	W21/5W
Halogen headlamps	Front turn signal	PWY24W
Xenon headlamps	Front turn signal	PWY24W
Rear fog lamps	Rear fog lamp bulb	H21W

All other lamps are either Light Emitting Diode (LED) or Xenon units, and should only be renewed or serviced by qualified personnel.

### Warning:

Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

## XENON LIGHTS

### Warning:

High voltage is required to ignite the gas and metal vapor which are used to power xenon lights. Contact with this voltage can cause serious injury. Replacement or maintenance of xenon lights should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.

### Warning:

Xenon light units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure the light units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

Warning:

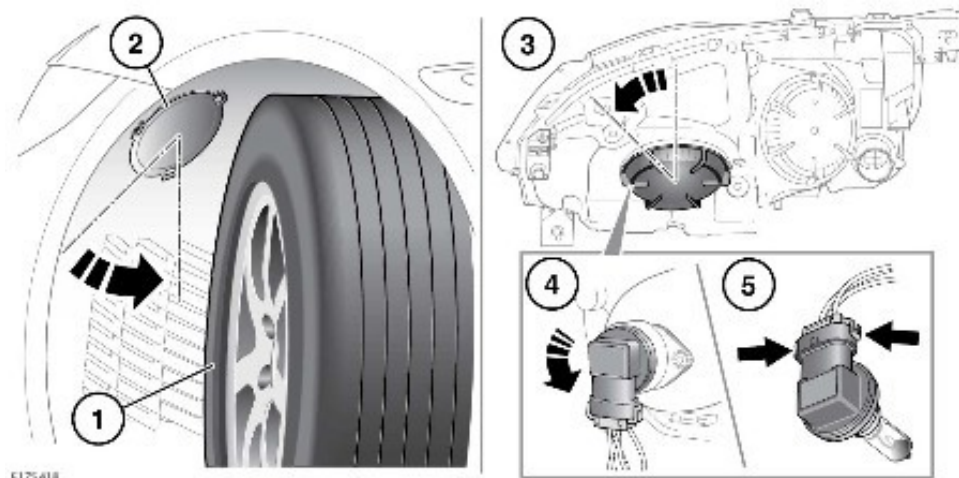
Xenon light units contain mercury which is highly toxic and can be extremely harmful.

Seek advice about the correct disposal of xenon light units from a retailer/authorized repairer, or the local authority.

## HALOGEN LOW AND HIGH BEAM BULB

Caution:

See [CHANGING A BULB](#).



Warning:

To prevent the vehicle from moving and causing personal injury, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

1. To allow for greater access, start the engine and turn the steering onto the relevant full lock. Switch off the ignition.
2. Rotate the vehicle cover approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.
3. Rotate the appropriate headlamp cover approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.

Note:

Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

4. Rotate the bulb holder approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then pull to remove.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

5. Release the clips and remove the electrical connector.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

Caution:

Make sure to straighten the steering system before driving the vehicle.

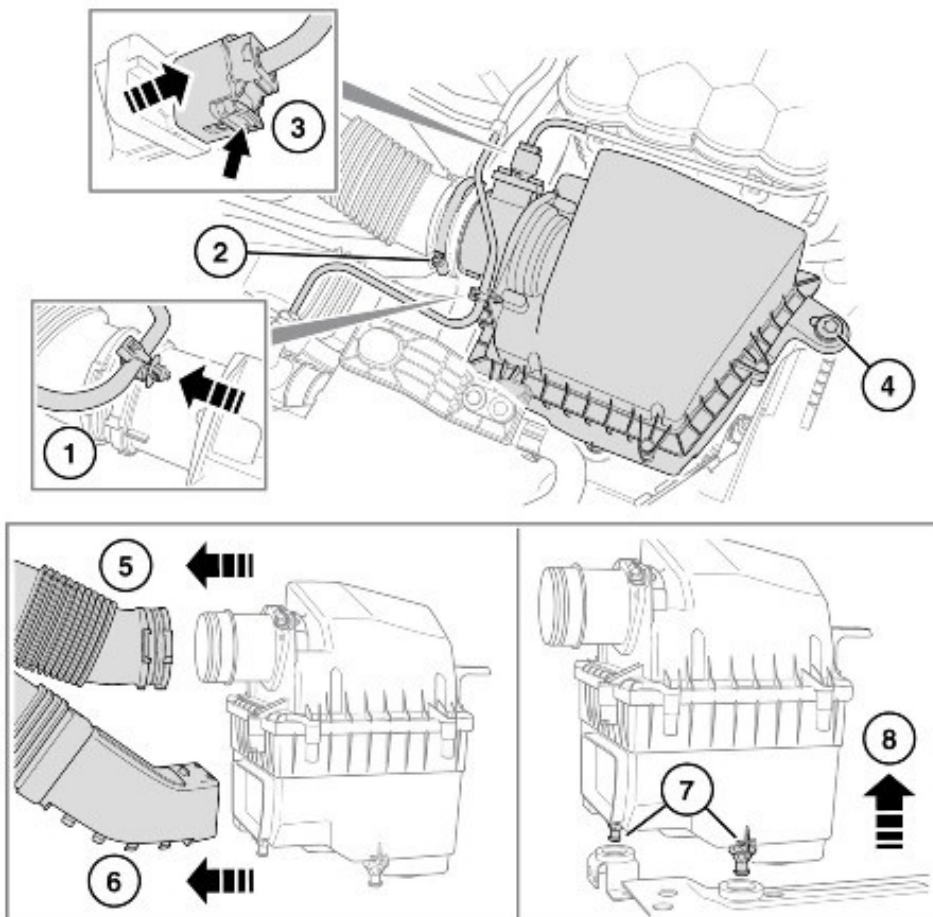
## DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN HEADLAMP

Caution:

See [CHANGING A BULB](#).

Air cleaner removal:

The air cleaner has to be removed to allow access to the left-side Daytime running lamp bulb holder/bulb unit on all engine variants. This will also apply to the right-side for vehicles with a 3.0L engine.



Open the hood and follow the procedure below:

1. Lightly pull the coolant pipe/retaining lug, to release it from the air cleaner.

Note:

Do not use excessive force, as this may damage the coolant pipe.

2. Continually turn the air pipe clamp bolt counter-clockwise to loosen and release.

Note:

Do not remove the air pipe clamp.

3. Press up and hold the lug at the base of the electrical connection and then lightly pull to release it from the air cleaner.
4. Continually turn the air cleaner retaining bolt counter-clockwise to remove.
5. Lightly pull the upper air pipe to release it from the air cleaner.
6. Lightly pull the lower air pipe away, to release it from the air cleaner.
7. Lift up the air cleaner casing, to release the 2 locating/securing lugs.

Note:

If the rubber grommets remain attached to the air cleaner, then remove them and refit to the vehicle's body before refitting the air cleaner.

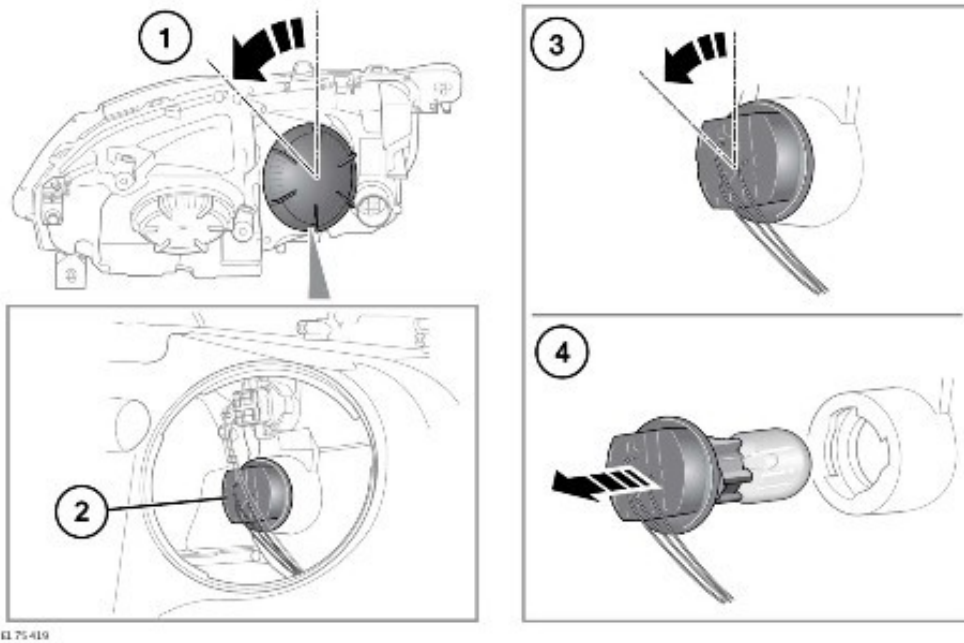
8. Remove the air cleaner from the vehicle.

Caution:

Observe the position of the coolant pipe, wiring loom, and both air pipes during removal and refitting of the air cleaner.

Reverse the removal procedure to refit the air cleaner.

### Daytime running lamp bulb removal:



Open the hood and follow the procedure below:

1. Rotate the appropriate headlamp cover approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and then lightly pull away to remove it from the headlamp.

Note:

Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

2. Locate the Daytime running lamp bulb holder.
3. Rotate the bulb holder approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise.
4. Pull to remove the bulb holder from the headlamp, and access the bulb.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb holder/bulb unit to aid refitting.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

### FRONT TURN SIGNAL BULB REPLACEMENT

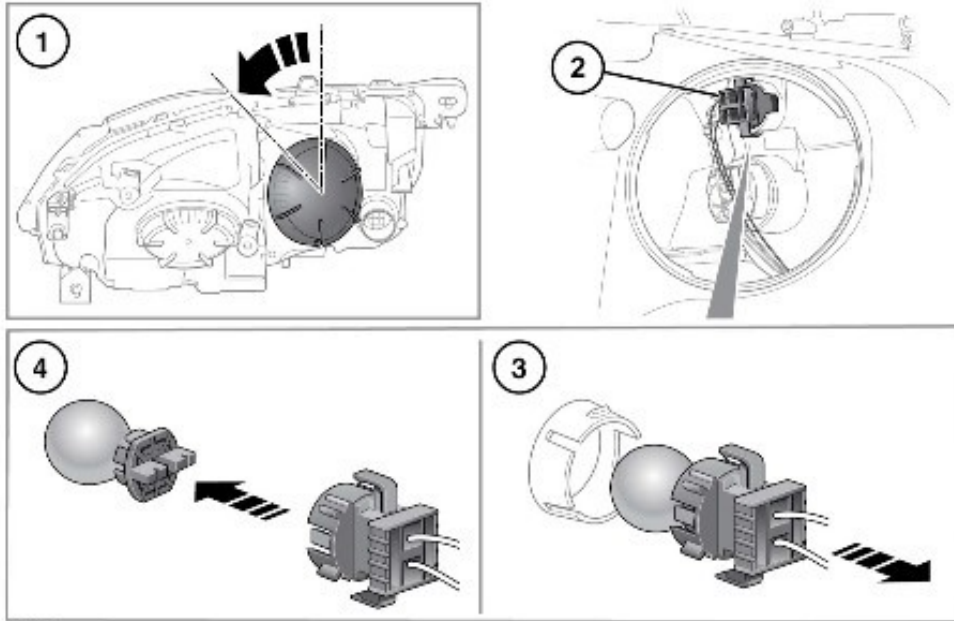
Caution:

See [CHANGING A BULB](#).

The air cleaner has to be removed to allow access to the left-side headlamp and also for the right-side headlamp for vehicles with a 3.0L engine. See the air cleaner removal information, [DAYTIME RUNNING LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT - HALOGEN HEADLAMP](#).



Halogen headlamp turn signal bulb:



61 75 417

1. Rotate the appropriate headlamp cover approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove.

Note:

Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

2. Locate the turn signal bulb.

3. Pull the bulb holder to remove it from the headlamp.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

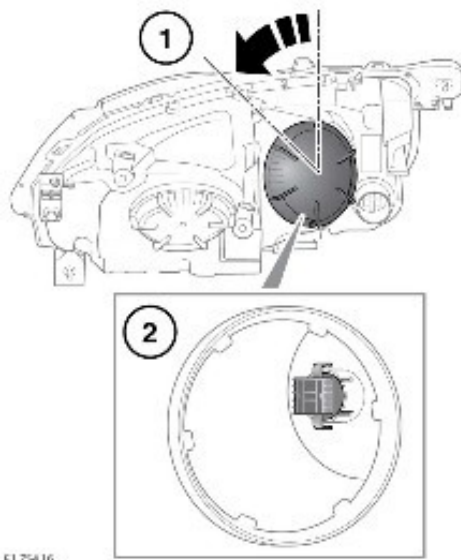
4. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

Xenon headlamp turn signal bulb:



1. Rotate the appropriate headlamp cover approximately 45 degrees counter-clockwise to release and remove.

Note:

Note the orientation of the cover to aid refitting.

2. Pull the bulb holder to remove it from the headlamp.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb holder to aid refitting.

3. Pull the bulb to remove it from the bulb holder.

Note:

Note the orientation of the bulb to aid refitting.

Reverse the removal procedure to install a new bulb.

## REAR FOG LAMP BULB REPLACEMENT

Caution:

See [CHANGING A BULB](#).

Caution:

If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust system components until they have cooled.

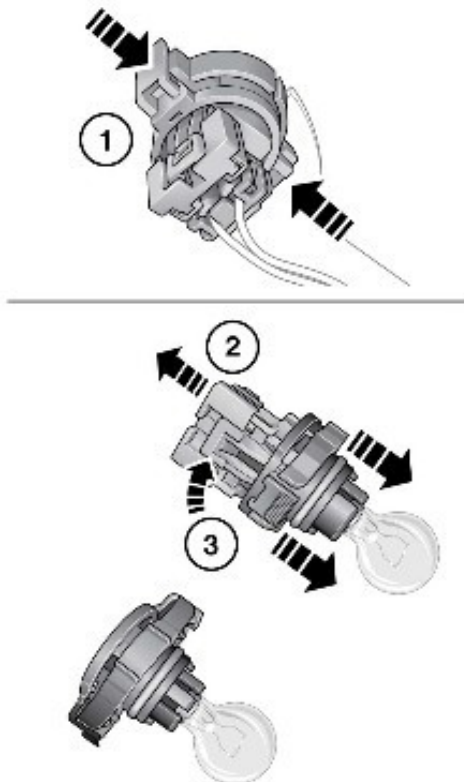
Access to a rear fog lamp housing is from beneath and behind the rear bumper. The bulb holder is a black plastic unit that incorporates the bulb. No tools are required but a torch may be of use.

1. To remove the bulb holder, press in the outer wings on the black plastic unit and pull the holder free of the housing.
2. To separate the bulb holder from the electrical connector, first push up the connector lock.
3. Push in the release mechanism while pulling the connector and bulb holder apart.

Note:

Inside the bulb holder are 3 locating lugs. When fitting the new bulb unit, the lugs must mate up to the connector correctly.

Refitting is a reverse of the removal process. Make sure the connector lock is pressed down and that the bulb unit locates securely into the fog lamp housing.



## WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

### Caution:

To avoid damage to the hood, do not lift the wiper blades when they are in the normal parked position.

### Note:

The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are replaced.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the ignition on and then off again.
3. Immediately press the wiper/washer control to its lowest position (as if to command a single wipe, see [WIPER OPERATION](#)), hold this position while switching on the ignition again.

The wipers will move to their service position.

4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the ignition off. This will return the wipers to the park position.

### Note:

Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

### Note:

Replace the wiper blades in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

## SUNROOF RESET

Make sure that the conditions, listed below, are met before carrying out the sunroof and/or sunroof blind reset procedure:

1. The ambient air temperature needs to be within the range of 41°F (5°C) to 149°F (65°C).
2. The vehicle has to be stationary.
3. The vehicle's battery is sufficiently charged and the electrical connections are good.

The sunroof and/or sunroof blind need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the sunroof and/or sunroof blind as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Manually fully close the sunroof and/or sunroof blind. Release the switches. See [ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#).

### Warning:

Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an Anti-trap system, death or serious injury could occur. See [SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM](#).

3. Fully press and hold the front of the sunroof switch for 10 seconds, to start the reset cycle. Continue to hold the front of the sunroof switch.

### Note:

For vehicles with a fixed sunroof, press and hold the front of the sunroof blind switch.

### Note:

If the switch is released, then the whole procedure has to be repeated.

4. The reset cycle:

Fully opens the sunroof blind.

Fully opens and then fully closes the sunroof.

### Note:

Not applicable for vehicles with a fixed sunroof.

Fully closes the sunroof blind.

### Warning:

The Anti-trap system is disabled during the reset cycle. Make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped.

5. Once the reset cycle has completed and the sunroof blind has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof and/or the sunroof blind can now be operated as normal.

## WINDOW RESET

The windows will need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the windows as follows:

1. Close the window fully.
2. Release the switch, then lift it to the close position and hold for 2 seconds.
3. Release the switch.
4. Repeat the lift and release procedure twice more.

5. Test the window for correct manual and automatic switch operation. See [ELECTRIC WINDOWS](#).
6. Repeat the procedure on each window.

Note:

It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows, to make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times.

## FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note, it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

It is also the responsibility of the owner to make sure the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure, as indicated on the pressure gauge. Only use fire extinguishers approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

## THE EXTERIOR

Caution:

To prevent damage to your vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's handbook.

Caution:

Never use cleaning products which are not approved for use on vehicles.

Caution:

To avoid damage to the hood, do not lift the wipers when they are in the normal parked position. See [WIPERS SERVICE POSITION](#).

Caution:

Following cleaning of the vehicle's exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive, in order to dry out the brakes.

Caution:

Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful enough to penetrate door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, radiator cooling fins, body seals, cameras, or at any components which may be damaged.

Do not aim the water jet directly at any rubber gaiters or seals on suspension joints.

Make sure that the water jet nozzle is more than 12 inches (300) mm away from vehicle components.

## SENSORS AND CAMERAS

#### Caution:

When washing the vehicle, do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Park assist and Parking aid sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

## PAINTWORK

#### Caution:

Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

#### Caution:

Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes, and power-operated mops, are not recommended.

## ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### Caution:

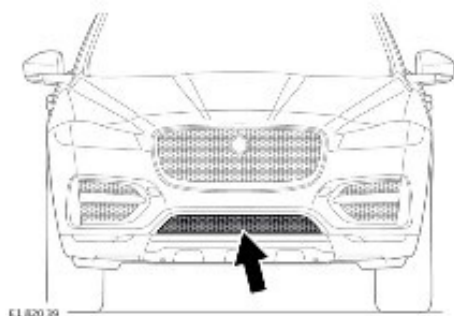
Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.

#### Caution:

Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

## AFTER OFF-ROAD DRIVING

Make sure the vehicle's underside is cleaned as soon as possible after driving off-road.



#### Caution:

Make sure the areas around air intakes and the front grille are clean and clear of debris. Pay particular attention to the lower grille and radiator. Failure to do so may cause the engine to overheat, leading to

severe engine damage.

## ALLOY WHEELS

Caution:

Use only approved wheel cleaning products.

## GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

To avoid damaging the protective coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

## REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear glass, use only a soft, damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

## SUNROOF WIND DEFLECTOR

A mild solution of soap and water, or car shampoo, should be used to clean the wind deflector net periodically. Support the underside of the net with a soft cloth, and gently scrub the net using a soft bristled brush.

## REMOVING GREASE AND TAR

Remove grease or tar with Jaguar Tar Remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windshield wiper blades.

Caution:

Make sure that after using methylated or white spirit, the area is washed immediately with soapy water, to remove all traces of spirit.

## POLISHING

Caution:

Chrome polish, or other abrasive cleaners, must not be used on the vehicle's brightwork.

It is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using Jaguar polish and a polishing cloth.

## THE INTERIOR



### Warning:

Some cleaning products contain substances that are harmful and can cause health problems if used incorrectly, and may cause damage to the vehicle's interior. Make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions carefully.

### Caution:

To prevent damage to your vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's handbook.

## CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

### Caution:

Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.

### Caution:

Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls.

### Caution:

Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products.

### Caution:

When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components.

## FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

### Caution:

Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.

### Caution:

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

### Caution:

When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

Use Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, following the instructions. Avoid over-wetting.

## LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months, as follows:

1. Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-colored cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth, to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
2. If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm, soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.
3. Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean, soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The cleaner will nourish and moisturize and help to improve the surface protective film against dust and substances.

1. Do not use solvents. Do not use detergents, furniture polish or household cleaners. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty. Jaguar recommend a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in your vehicle.
2. Dark clothing may stain leather seats, just like other upholstery products.
3. Sharp objects, such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
4. Unless spillages, such as tea, coffee or ink, are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

## REMOVING STAINS

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry-in.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, dry cleaning fluid or clean water. Follow the instructions on the package.

## SEAT BELTS

Warning:

Do not allow any water, cleaning products, or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended.

Note:

While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage/wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to, and rectified by your Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## AIR BAG MODULE COVERS

### Warning:

Air bag covers should be cleaned using only a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

### Warning:

Do not allow the air bag covers, or surrounding areas, to become contaminated with liquids. Any substance which enters the mechanism can prevent correct deployment of an air bag during an impact.

## CARPET AND MATS

### Warning:

Correctly secure the floor mats before driving. Never place mats on top of each other. Unsecured or incorrectly positioned mats can obstruct the brake and/or accelerator pedal.

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains, a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

## CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

### Warning:

Do not polish the Instrument panel. Polished surfaces are reflective, and may interfere with the driver's view.

### Caution:

When cleaning around electrical equipment, such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

### Caution:

Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as facia switches.

1. Clean with a soft, dry cloth.
2. Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
3. Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
4. Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
5. To prevent errors occurring, make sure only one finger at a time is in contact with the Touch screen.
6. Do not use excessive pressure.

## WIPER BLADES

### Caution:

Do not use excessive pressure.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed, using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

## BLOCKED WASHER JETS

### Warning:

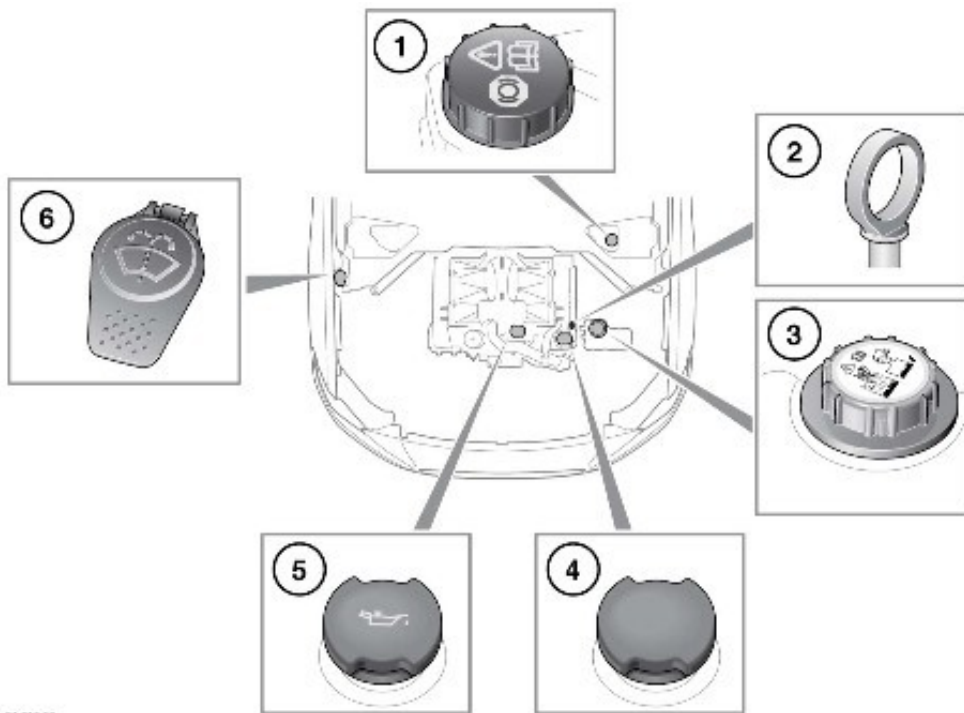
Do not operate the washer jets during unblocking or adjustment. Windshield washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturer's instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet, by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

## REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

## FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS



1. Brake fluid reservoir cap. Remove the left side under hood cover for access. See [UNDER HOOD COVERS - REMOVAL](#).

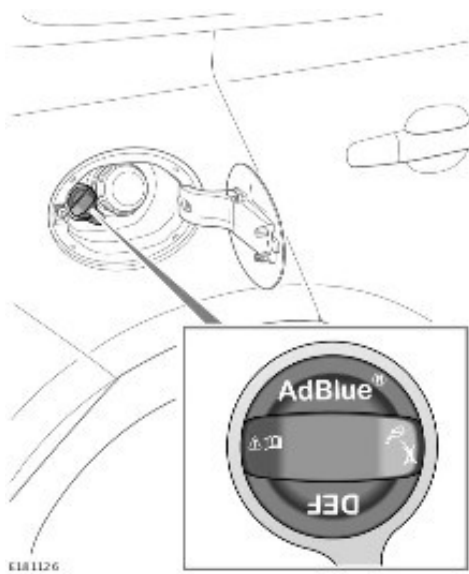
2. Engine oil level dipstick (2.0L diesel).
3. Engine coolant reservoir filler cap.
4. Engine oil filler cap (3.0L gasoline).
5. Engine oil filler cap (2.0L diesel).
6. Washer fluid reservoir filler cap.

Warning:

While working in the engine compartment, always observe the safety precautions. See [SAFETY IN THE GARAGE](#).

Warning:

Do not start the engine, or drive the vehicle, if there is a possibility that any leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust. Seek qualified assistance immediately.



The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap is located to the inside of the fuel filler flap. See [DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID \(DEF\)](#).

## CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

The engine oil should be checked frequently and topped up as required, using the correct grade for the engine.

Caution:

Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in the oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.

Caution:

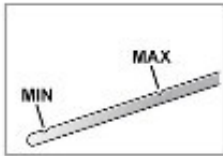
Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark on the dipstick or the oil level indicator.

## Caution:

If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed in the Message center, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

Engines with a dipstick:

### 2.0L diesel



Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

1. The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.
2. The vehicle is on level ground.
3. The engine oil is cold.

## Note:

If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let the vehicle stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain back into the sump. Do not start the engine.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint-free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level. If

the oil level is nearer to the upper mark on the dipstick, do not add any oil.

If the oil level is below half-way, add 0.5 U.S. quarts (0.5 liters) of oil. Recheck the level and add more oil, if necessary.

If the oil level is below the lower mark, add 1.9 U.S. quarts (1.8 liters) of oil.

Once the oil has reached the correct level on the dipstick, wait 5 minutes and recheck.

Engines without a dipstick:

These engines feature an electrical monitoring system. The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running, or the vehicle is in motion.

Before checking the engine oil level, make sure that:

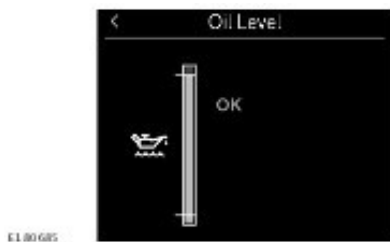
1. The vehicle is stationary and the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

2. The vehicle is on level ground.
3. The engine oil has reached its normal working temperature (oil is hot).
4. The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes, as the system does not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilized.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition (do not start the engine).
2. Select **Oil Level** from the **Vehicle Information** menu. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

The engine oil level indicator is displayed in the Message center.



An indication of the oil level is displayed in the indicator. Messages to the right of the indicator advise you of any action you may need to take.

Message	Action
<b>OK</b>	No action required.
<b>Overfilled</b>	Seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle as this will cause serious damage to the engine.
<b>Low</b>	Add 1.6 U.S. quarts (1.5 liters) of oil, then recheck the level.
<b>Critically Low</b>	Seek qualified assistance immediately.
<b>Add XX Quarts</b>	Add the advised quantity of oil to the engine, then recheck the level.
<b>Not Available</b>	The oil level is stabilizing. Switch off the ignition, wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.
<b>ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT</b>	Seek qualified assistance immediately.

## TOPPING UP THE OIL

Caution:

Your vehicle's warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.

Caution:

Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. See [LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS](#).

Caution:

Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level rechecked to make sure the engine is not overfilled.

Caution:

It is essential to use the correct specification oil and to make sure the oil is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated.

1. Turn the oil filler cap counter-clockwise to remove.

2. For engines with a dipstick:

Add oil to maintain the level between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the dipstick.

Note:

The approximate quantity of oil required to raise the level from **MIN** to **MAX** is 1.9 U.S. quarts (1.8 liters).

3. For engines with an electrical monitoring system:

Add oil, as indicated by the engine oil level indicator messages in the Message center.

4. Clean up any oil spilled during topping up.

5. Check the oil level again after 5 minutes.

6. Refit the oil filler cap by turning clockwise, until an audible click is heard.

## CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

Caution:

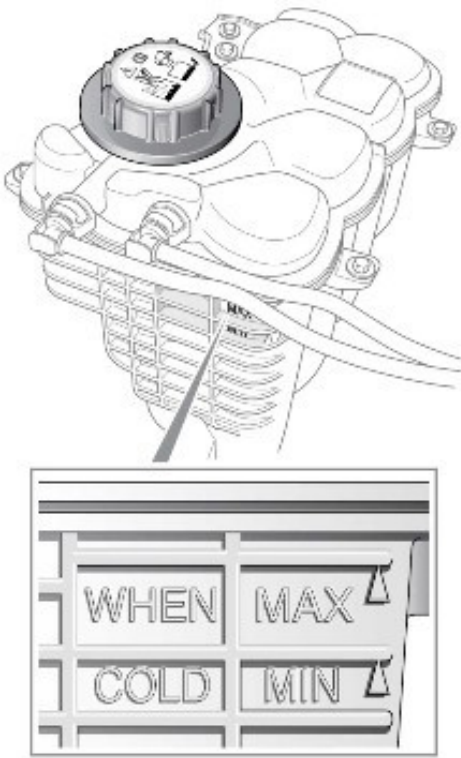
Running the engine without coolant causes serious engine damage.

Caution:

If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant reservoir level should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.





E1 667 60

Make sure the coolant level remains between the **MIN** and **MAX** indicator marks on the side of the expansion tank.

If the level has dropped suddenly, or by a large amount, arrange for the vehicle to be examined by a qualified technician as soon as possible.

## TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

### Warning:

Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot - escaping steam or scalding water could cause serious personal injury. Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.

Avoid spilling antifreeze onto a hot engine - a fire may result.

Antifreeze is poisonous and can be fatal if swallowed. Keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.

### Caution:

When traveling in places where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water causes serious engine damage.

The use of non-approved antifreeze has an adverse effect on the engine's cooling system and; therefore, engine durability.

Antifreeze damages painted surfaces; soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Do not use any anti-leak products in the cooling system, as it causes damage to the vehicle.

Antifreeze contains important corrosion inhibitors. The antifreeze content of the coolant must be maintained at 50%  $\pm$  5% all year round (not just in cold conditions). To make sure the anti-corrosion properties of the coolant are maintained, the antifreeze content should be checked once a year and completely replaced every ten years, regardless of the distance traveled. Failure to do so may cause corrosion of the radiator and engine components. The specific gravity of a 50% antifreeze solution at 68°F (20°C) is 1.068 and protects against frost down to -40°F (-40°C).

1. Remove the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating it counter-clockwise.
2. Top up to the **MAX** indicator mark on the side of the coolant reservoir. Use a mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze. See [LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS](#).

Note:

In an emergency - and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable - top up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt, consult a qualified technician.

3. Refit the coolant reservoir filler cap by rotating it clockwise, until the cap's ratchet clicks at least three times.

## CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL

Warning:

Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.

Warning:

Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.

Warning:

If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of clean water.

Warning:

Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g., a hot engine).

Warning:

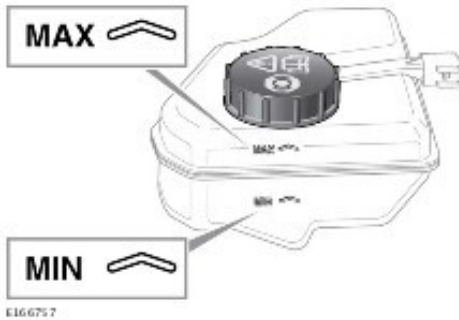
Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the **MIN** mark.

If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the Instrument panel illuminates. See [BRAKE \(RED\)](#).

Note:

If the warning lamp illuminates while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits, by gently applying the brakes. Check and top up the fluid level, if necessary.

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).



1. Remove the driver's side, under-hood cover. See [FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS](#) and [UNDER HOOD COVERS - REMOVAL](#).
2. Check the brake fluid reservoir level. The level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

Note:

The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

## TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

Caution:

Always use brake fluid which has the correct specification. See [LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS](#).

Brake fluid damages painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately, and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

Only use new fluid from an airtight container. Fluid from open containers, or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture. This will adversely affect performance and must not be used.

Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure, seek qualified assistance.

To top up the brake fluid:

1. Rotate the reservoir filler cap counter-clockwise and remove.
2. Top up the reservoir to at least the minimum mark.

3. To refit the reservoir filler cap, rotate the cap clockwise.
4. Refit the under hood cover. See [UNDER HOOD COVERS - REFITTING](#).

## CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

### Warning:

Some windshield washer products are inflammable, particularly if high or undiluted concentrations are exposed to sparking. Do not allow windshield washer fluid to come into contact with exposed flames or sources of ignition, as this can cause a fire or explosion.

### Warning:

If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 40°F (4°C), use a windshield washer fluid with antifreeze protection. In cold weather, failure to use a windshield washer fluid with frost protection, could result in impaired vision and increase the risk of a vehicle crash.

### Caution:

Do not use an antifreeze or a vinegar and water solution in the washer reservoir. Antifreeze damages painted surfaces, while vinegar can damage the windshield washer pump.

### Caution:

Body panels may suffer discoloration as a result of windshield washer fluid spillage. Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

### Caution:

Only use approved windshield washer fluid.

The washer fluid reservoir supplies the windshield and rear screen washer jets, and the headlight washer jets.

Check and top up the reservoir level at least every week. Always top up with windshield washer fluid to prevent freezing.

Operate the washer controls periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

## TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

### Note:

National or local regulations may restrict the use of Volatile Organic Compounds (VOCs) which are commonly used as antifreeze agents in windshield washer fluid. A windshield washer fluid with limited VOC content should be used only if it provides adequate freeze resistance for all climates in which the vehicle is operated.

Top up the windshield washer fluid as follows:

1. Clean the washer fluid reservoir filler cap before removing, to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir until the fluid is visible in the filler neck.
4. Replace the filler cap.

## BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow open flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure, when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the Owner's Handbook for information, before handling the battery.

## CALIFORNIA PROPOSITION 65 SECOND WARNING STATEMENT

Warning:

Batteries, battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, and other chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

## BATTERY CARE

Warning:

If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal. Seek medical assistance immediately.

Warning:

If battery electrolyte comes into contact with eyes, skin, or clothes, remove the affected clothing. Flush the skin and eyes with large amounts of clean water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

Warning:

Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so can cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.

Warning:

The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build-up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.

Warning:

Do not expose the battery to an open flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Warning:

Never jump start, boost or charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Warning:

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, the battery. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

### Warning:

Do not allow battery fluid to contact with skin or eyes. Battery fluid is both toxic and corrosive which can result in severe injuries. If battery fluid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothes, remove the affected clothing and flush the skin or eyes with plenty of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.

### Caution:

Do not allow battery fluid to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery fluid comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with plenty of clean water.

This vehicle is fitted an Absorbed Glass Matt (AGM) battery.

### Note:

AGM batteries are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

### Caution:

Do not attempt to open or remove the top from an AGM battery.

## CONNECTING JUMP LEADS

### Warning:

Remove all metal jewelry before working on, or near, a battery or boost terminals. Never allow metal objects or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery or boost terminals. Metal objects can cause sparks or short circuits, resulting in an explosion.

Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with skin. Battery posts and terminals contain lead and lead compounds which are toxic. Always wash the hands thoroughly after handling the battery.

Do not expose any battery to an open flame or spark, as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.

Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.

Rotating parts of the engine can cause serious injury. Take extreme care when working near rotating parts of the engine.

Before attempting to start the vehicle, make sure that the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied, or suitably chock the wheels. Make sure that Park (**P**) is selected.

Suitable eye protection must be worn when working in the area of a battery.

During normal use, batteries emit explosive gas sufficient to cause severe explosions and capable of causing serious injury. Keep sparks and open flames away from the battery.

Do not connect the jump leads to any battery terminal on this vehicle. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. The charging system may also be damaged.

Caution:

Make sure there is no physical contact between the donor and disabled vehicles, other than the jump leads.

Caution:

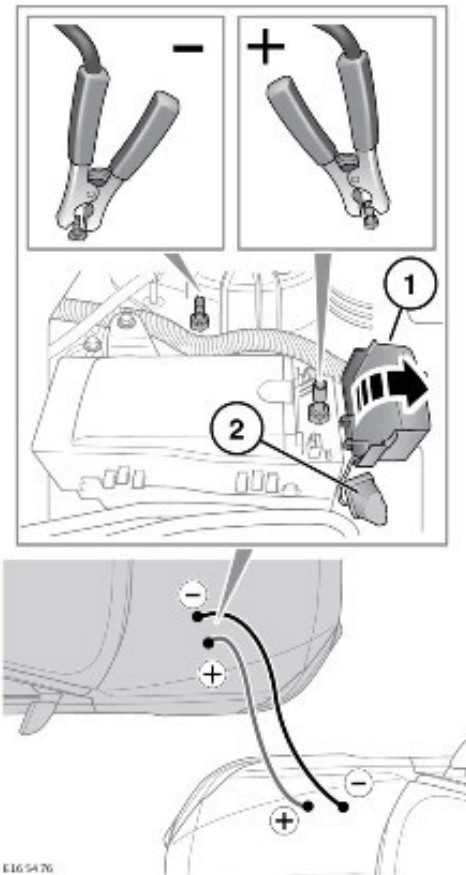
Make sure that any battery or starting aid is a 12 volt device.

Caution:

Disconnect the jump leads before operating any electrical equipment.

Note:

Before connecting the jump leads to the disabled vehicle's boost point terminals, make sure the donor vehicle's boost point connections are correct. Also make sure that all electrical equipment has been switched off.



Open the hood and locate the engine compartment front fuse box. See [FUSE BOX LOCATIONS](#).

1. Release the boost terminal lid, located on the end of the engine compartment fuse box.
2. Release the boost terminal cover and set aside.

The following procedure should be used to connect and disconnect the jump leads:

1. Connect one end of the positive (red) jump lead to the positive boost terminal on the donor vehicle.



Note:

Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.

2. Connect the other end of the positive (red) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's positive boost point terminal.
3. Connect one end of the negative (black) jump lead to the negative boost terminal on the donor vehicle.

Note:

Refer to the donor vehicle's Owner's Handbook for the recommended boost terminal location.

4. Connect the other end of the negative (black) jump lead to the disabled vehicle's negative boost point terminal.

Note:

Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all four connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle and allow it to idle for a few minutes.
6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

Note:

Do not switch on any electrical circuits on the previously disabled vehicle, until after the jump leads have been removed.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for a few minutes.
8. Switch off the donor vehicle.
9. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.
10. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the donor vehicle.
11. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the disabled vehicle.
12. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the donor vehicle.

Refit the positive boost point terminal access covers and close the hood.

## CONNECTING A STARTING AID

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a booster battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given:

1. Connect the positive (red) jump lead to the vehicle's positive (+) boost point terminal.
2. Connect the negative (black) jump lead to the vehicle's negative (-) boost point terminal.
3. Switch on the starting aid.

4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect the negative (black) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.
6. Switch off the starting aid.
7. Disconnect the positive (red) jump lead from the vehicle's boost point terminal.

## REMOVING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Special tools are required to refit the battery after removal. Battery removal and refit should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

## CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Warning:

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

If the vehicle's battery should require charging, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer or your local authority.

## REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY

Warning:

Battery disconnection, removal, and replacement should be carried out only by qualified personnel. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.

If the vehicle's battery should require replacing, the battery must be removed from the vehicle. Consult a retailer/authorized repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a retailer/authorized repairer or your local authority.

## EFFECTS OF DISCONNECTING

Disconnecting the battery can affect a number of vehicle systems, especially if there is insufficient battery power before disconnection. For example, the alarm may trigger, depending on its state when the battery is disconnected. If the alarm does sound, use the smart key, in the normal way, to disarm the security system. The windows may need recalibrating to operate correctly.

## BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system begins to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that the battery's condition is not within the set parameters, there are two levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the message center.

1. **Energy Management:** Is displayed on the touch screen if the engine is not running and if system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.
2. **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Is displayed on the touch screen and in the message center, if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes, the IPSM begins shutting down the vehicle's systems. Normal system operation resumes when the engine is started.

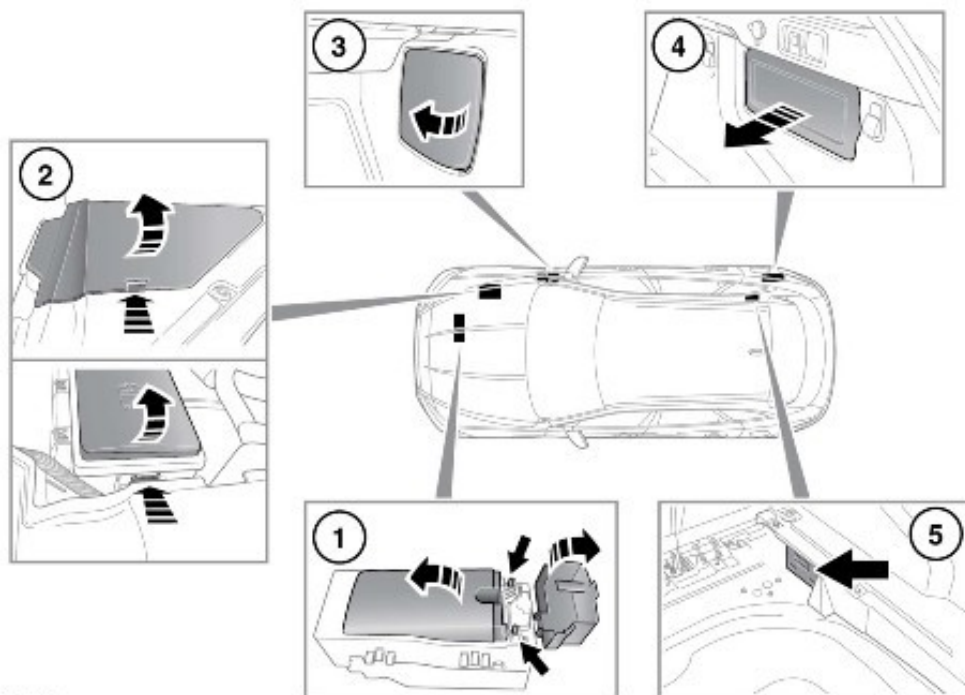
Caution:

Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Note:

If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 32°F (0°C), or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 32°F (0°C). The drive allows the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, restart the engine. If problems still exist, contact a retailer/authorized repairer.

## FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E181660

#### Caution:

When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture. Refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

There are five separate fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle, each one containing fuses protecting a different group of circuits.

#### 1. Engine compartment front fuse box:

Lift up the positive booster terminal cover. Press and hold the fuse box cover's securing clips and then lift to open the cover.

#### 2. Engine compartment rear fuse box:

Remove the under bonnet cover. To do this, lightly press and hold the securing clip, then lift to release and pull to remove. See [UNDER-HOOD COVERS - REMOVAL](#). Press and hold the fuse box cover's securing clip to lift and pull to remove.

#### 3. Passenger compartment fuse box, located on the right-side A pillar, below the fascia:

Use a suitable tool to unclip and release the rearward edge of the panel, and then pull to remove.

Note:

Note the orientation of the panel to aid refitting.

#### 4. Luggage compartment upper fuse box:

The fuse box is accessed by removing the right-side luggage compartment access panel. Pull on the rear edge of the access panel, to remove..

Note:

The luggage compartment upper fuse box also contains spare fuses and the vehicle's fuse removal

tool.

#### 5. Luggage compartment lower fuse box:

The fuse box is accessed by removing the luggage compartment floor panel, and the spare wheel tool kit. See [WHEEL CHANGING](#).

### CHANGING A FUSE

Caution:

Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse. Caution:

Fit approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of a matching specification. Using an incorrect fuse, may result in damage to the vehicle's electrical system and can result in a fire.

Caution:

If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by your retailer/authorized repairer.

Note:

It is recommended that relays should only be replaced by qualified persons.

A break in the wire inside the fuse indicates that the fuse has blown and must be replaced.

### ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Engine compartment front fuse box:

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Color	Circuit
1	5	Tan.	Left side headlight motor.
2	5	Tan.	Headlights.
3	5	Tan.	Right side headlight motor.
4			
5			
6	30	Green.	Headlight power wash.
7			
8			
9	10	Red.	Front fog lights.
10	15	Blue.	Intercooler water pump.

Engine compartment rear fuse box:

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Color	Circuit
11	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
12	15	Blue.	Engine management system.
13	10	Red.	Gear selector. Fuel system. Engine management system.

14	15	Blue.	Engine management system (2.0L diesel).
15	10	Red.	Engine cooling. Engine mounts. Engine management system.
16	25	Clear.	Engine management system.
17	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors.
18	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors.
19	20	Yellow.	Exhaust sensors (3.0L gasoline).
20			
21			
22	5	Tan.	Intercooler water pump.
23	5	Tan.	Engine management system. Starter motor monitor. Electrical power management.
24	15	Blue.	Transmission control module.
25	30	Green.	Starter motor.
26	5	Tan.	Engine management system (3.0L gasoline).
27	25	Clear.	Transfer case.
28	30	Green.	Fuel pump.

#### PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (Amps)	Fuse Color	Circuit
1	20	Yellow.	Sunroof.
2	5	Tan.	Brake pedalswitch.
3	5	Tan.	Immobilizer.
4	5	Tan.	Diagnostic socket.
5	5	Tan.	Battery back up sounder.
6	20	Yellow.	Second row auxiliary power socket.
7	20	Yellow.	Cubby box auxiliary power socket.
8	20	Yellow.	Left side front seat.
9	20	Yellow.	Right side front seat.
10	30	Green.	Left side front seat.
11	30	Green.	Right side front seat.
12	20	Yellow.	Side steps.
13	20	Yellow.	Front auxiliary power socket.
14	20	Yellow.	Rear seat recline.
15			
16	5	Tan.	Electrical supply.
17	5	Tan.	Door handles antenna.
18	15	Blue.	Horns.
19			
20	20	Yellow.	Driver's heated or climate seat.
21	20	Yellow.	Front passenger's heated or climate seat.
22	25	Clear.	Right side front door module.
23	25	Clear.	Left side rear door module.
24	25	Clear.	Right side rear door module.
25	25	Clear.	Left side front door module.
26			

27			
28	10	Red.	Steering angle sensor.
29	5	Tan.	Passive entry.
30	20	Yellow.	Passive entry.
31			
32	5	Tan.	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
33	15	Blue.	Air Conditioning (A/C).
34	10	Red.	USB socket.
35			

## LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

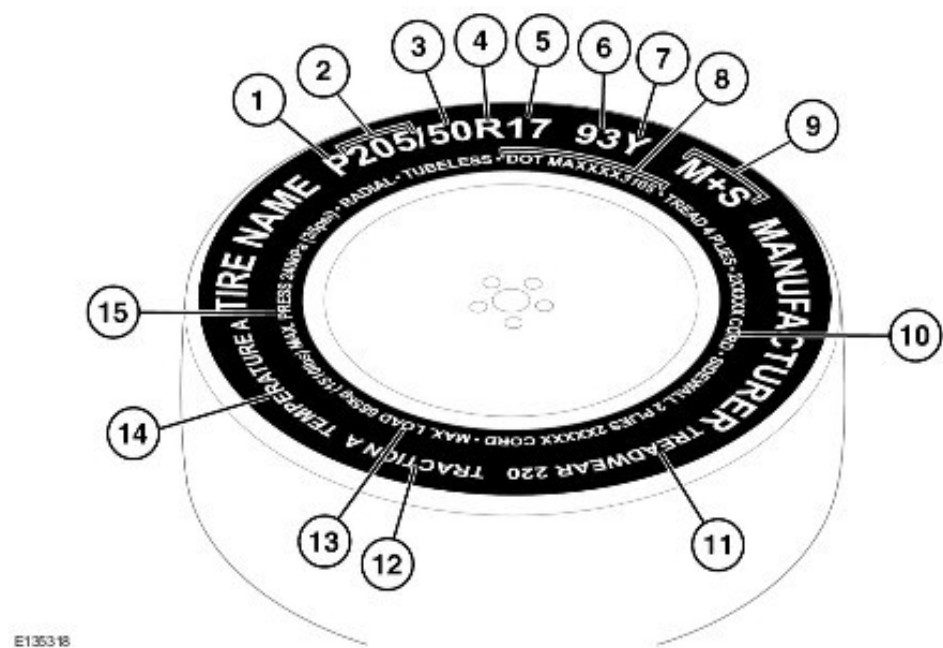
Luggage compartment upper fuse box:

<b>Fuse No</b>	<b>Rating (Amps)</b>	<b>Fuse Color</b>	<b>Circuit</b>
1	20	Yellow.	Luggage compartment auxiliary power socket.
2	5	Tan.	Heated rear seats.
3	20	Yellow.	Left side heated rear seat.
4	20	Yellow.	Right side heated rear seat.
5	10	Red.	Adaptive dynamic suspension. Electronic differential.
6	10	Red.	Message center.
7	5	Tan.	Electrical power management.
8	25	Clear.	Trailer socket.
9	10	Red.	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).
10	25	Clear.	DEF.
11	10	Red.	Rear view mirror. Blind spot monitor. Camera.
12	10	Red.	Entertainment system.
13	10	Red.	Heated steering wheel.
14	10	Red.	Head Up Display (HUD).
15	5	Tan.	Camera.
16			
17	5	Tan.	Adaptive cruise control.
18	20	Yellow.	Trailer socket.
19			
20	10	Red.	Telematics.
21			
22	15	Blue.	Driver's door switches. Driver's seat. Driver's seat switches. Front passenger seat.
23			
24	20	Yellow.	Rear auxiliary power socket.
25			
26	15	Blue.	Rear wiper.
27	30	Green.	Electrically deployable tow bar. Trailer.
28	30	Green.	Fuel system.
29	30	Green.	Powered luggage compartment lid.
30	5	Tan.	Diesel fuel pump.

Luggage compartment lower fuse box:

Fuse number	Rating (Amps)	Fuse colour	Circuits protected
1	15	Blue.	Touch screen. Climate control panel.
2	10	Red.	Audio amplifier.
3			
4	10	Red.	Navigation.
5	15	Blue.	Audio head unit.
6	15	Blue.	Portable media connector panel.
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15	15	Blue.	Heating and ventilation.
16	20	Yellow.	Auxiliary heater.

### TIRE MARKINGS



E135318

1. **P** indicates that the tire is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge, in millimeters.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tire is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim given in inches.



6. The load index for the tire. This index is not always

shown. Warning:

The load index and speed rating on all replacement tires should be, at least, the same specification as the original equipment. If in doubt consult, a retailer/authorized repairer.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tire should be used for extended periods. See [SPEED RATINGS](#).

8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN): This begins with the letters DOT and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next 2 numbers or letters are the plant code where the tire was manufactured, the last 4 numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 3109, the tire was made in the 31st week of 2009. The other numbers are marketing codes used at the manufacturer's discretion. This information can be used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires arecall.

9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tire has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.

10. The number of plies in both the tread area and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber-coated material make up the structure of the tire. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.

11. Wear rate indicator: A tire rated at 400, for example, will last longer than a tire rated at 200.

12. The traction rating grades a tire's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA, A, B** and **C**.

13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tire.

14. Heat resistance grading: The tire's resistance to heat is grade **A, B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tire, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.

15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tire. This pressure should not be used for normal driving. See [AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS](#).

## SPEED RATINGS

Rating	Speed mph(km/h)
Q	99 (160)
R	106 (170)
S	112 (180)
T	118 (190)
U	124 (200)
H	130 (210)

V	149 (240)
W	168 (270)
Y	186 (300)

## TIRE CARE

### Warning:

Do not drive the vehicle if a tire is damaged, excessively worn, or incorrectly inflated. A tire in such a condition may catastrophically fail and cause an accident.

### Warning:

Avoid contaminating the tires with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tire and cause a tire failure, which can result in an accident.

### Warning:

Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tire, and cause it to fail. Warning:

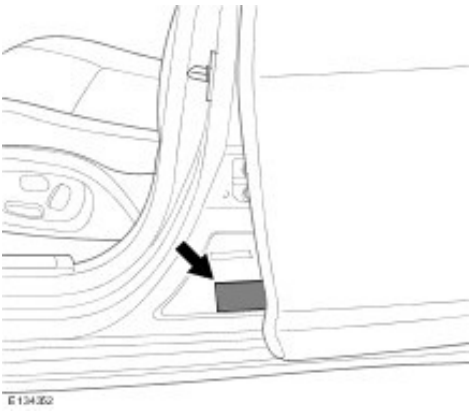
If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow, e.g.), do not exceed the 30 mph (50 km/h) point on the speedometer. Do not allow anyone to stand near or directly behind a tire that might spin.

### Warning:

Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tire.

All of the vehicle's tires (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear, and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tire, have it checked immediately by a tire repair center or a retailer/authorized repairer.

## TIRE PRESSURE LABEL



The recommended tire pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

These pressures provide optimum ride and handling characteristics for all normal operating conditions.

1. The label contains the following information:

The maximum number of occupants, divided between the front and rear of the vehicle.

The vehicle's capacity weight, which includes the weight of the driver, passengers and cargo. Cold inflation pressures for the front, rear and spare tires.

The size of the tires with which the vehicle was originally equipped.

Note:

The labels must not be changed, even if different wheels and tires are fitted at a later stage.

## TIRE PRESSURES

Warning:

All tire pressures, including the spare, should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge, when the tires are cold. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, resulting in a loss of vehicle control and potential personal injury.

Warning:

Pressure checks should only be carried out when the tires are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tire at, or below, the recommended cold inflation pressure, is dangerously under-inflated.

Warning:

Never drive your vehicle if the tire pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tire wear. This can lead to sudden tire failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tire wear, and poor handling.

Warning:

Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tire. Even if the tire appears to be inflated it could be

dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace or contact an approved repairer.

Warning:

Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Warning:

If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tire pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tires to cool before rechecking the pressures.

Check the tires, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long trips. If the tire pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g., a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tire under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 2 psi (0.14 bar) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified personnel.

If it is necessary to check tire pressures when the tires are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 4 - 6 psi (0.3 - 0.4 bar). Do not reduce the tire pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tires to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tire pressures: Caution:

To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways force on the gauge/inflator. Caution:

To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tire pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tire pressure from the gauge and add air, if required.
4. If air is added to the tire, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tire pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tire by pressing the center of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tire pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

	Up to 3occupants	Maximum Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW)
--	------------------	------------------------------------

<b>Tire size</b>	<b>Front pressures psi (kPa)</b>	<b>Rear pressures psi (kPa)</b>	<b>Front pressures psi (kPa)</b>	<b>Rear pressures psi (kPa)</b>
255/60 R18 112V	34 (230)	34 (230)	35 (240)	35 (240)
255/60 R18 112W	34 (230)	34 (230)	38 (260)	38 (260)
255/55 R19 111W	34 (230)	34 (230)	40 (270)	40 (270)
255/50 R20 109W	34 (230)	34 (230)	43 (290)	43 (290)
265/40 R22 106Y	34 (230)	34 (230)	43 (290)	43 (290)
175/80 R19 122M (Temporary use spare wheel)	61 (420)	61 (420)	61 (420)	61 (420)

## TIRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt from entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tire pressures.

Caution:

Do not twist or bend the valves when attaching a pressure hose or gauge, as damage may result.

## REPLACEMENT TIRES

Warning:

Always fit replacement tires of the same type, and wherever possible, of the same make and tread pattern. Failure to fit the same type, make and tread pattern may reduce vehicle stability

Warning:

If the use of tires not recommended by the vehicle manufacturer is unavoidable, make sure you read, and fully comply with, the tire manufacturer's instructions.

Warning:

The load and speed index ratings on all replacement tires must be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

Warning:

If lower speed rated specialist tires are fitted (e.g., winter tires or off-road tires), the vehicle must be driven within the speed limitations of the tires. Consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer for further information.

Warning:

Do not rotate the tires around the

vehicle. Caution:

Tire removal and fitting should be carried out by a Retailer/Authorized

Repairer. Caution:

When removing a tire from a wheel or fitting a tire to a wheel, make sure the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor is not damaged.

When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual reminder.

Tires should be replaced in sets of 4. If this is not possible, replace the tires in pairs (both front or both rear). When tires are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and the alignment checked.

For the correct tire specification and pressures, see [TIRE PRESSURES](#) or [TIRE PRESSURE LABEL](#). Alternatively, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer for advice.

## AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tires can be affected by a softening of the tire sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tire at the point where the tire meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tire behavior. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra mileage.

In order to minimize flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tire pressures can be increased to the maximum, as stated on the tire's sidewall. The tires must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See [TIRE PRESSURES](#).

## TIRE DEGRADATION

Tires degrade over time, due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that all tires, including the spare, are replaced at least every 6 years from the date of manufacture, but they may require replacement more frequently.

## USING WINTER TIRES

Note:

**M+S** (mud and snow) tires have a level of winter performance.

The **M+S** marking on the tire's sidewall indicates an 'all season' tire designed for use all year round, including cold temperatures, snow, and ice.

In many countries, legislation exists that requires the use of winter tires during specified periods of the year.

Note:

A dedicated winter tire often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tire, and the vehicle must; therefore, be driven within the speed limitation of the tire. Consult your Retailer/Authorized Repairer for further information.



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tires, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

The tire pressures indicated on the vehicle's tire information label are for use in all conditions on the original equipment tires. If a reduced speed rating tire is fitted, the recommended pressures are only suitable for use below 100 mph (160 km/h).

Winter tires must be fitted to all 4 wheels.

For optimum traction, tires should be run in for at least 100 miles (160 km) on dry roads, before driving on snow or ice.

Use of dedicated winter tires may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed.

If fitted with standard rubber valves, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp will flash for 75 seconds and then remain illuminated. The Message center will also display **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

When the original wheels and tires are refitted, the vehicle will need to travel a short distance to reset the TPMS and extinguish the warning lamp.

Approved winter tires			
Wheel size	Tire size	Brand	Pattern
18 inch wheels	255/60 R18 112H	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter
	255/60 R18 112H	Continental	Winter Contact TS 850P
	255/60 R18 112V	Michelin	Latitude Alpin 2
19 inch wheels	255/55 R19 111V	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter
	255/55 R19 111V	Continental	Winter Contact TS 850P
	255/55 R19 111V	Michelin	Latitude Alpin 2
20 inch wheels	255/50 R20 109V	Pirelli	Scorpion Winter
	255/50 R20 109V	Continental	Winter Contact TS 850P

Note:

If in doubt, or for further information, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.

## USING SNOW CHAINS

Warning:

Only use traction devices in heavy snow conditions, on compacted

snow. Warning:

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched off when using traction

devices. Warning:

Never exceed 30 mph (50 km/h) when traction devices are

fitted. Warning:

Never fit traction devices to a temporary-use spare wheel.

Traction devices approved by the vehicle manufacturer, may be used to improve traction in heavy snow conditions, on compacted snow.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

1. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only vehicle manufacturer approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer for information.
2. The wheels and tires fitted to this vehicle, must conform to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer's original equipment. This will help to enhance the performance of the traction devices. See [TIRE MARKINGS](#).
3. Do not fit a traction device to a temporary-use spare wheel.
4. Fit traction devices in pairs, on the same axle.
5. Always read, understand, and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
6. Avoid tire/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

Note:

When using snow chains, select Rain/Ice/Snow driving mode and switch DSC off. See [RAIN/ICE/SNOW](#) and [SWITCHING DSC OFF](#).

## UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION

The following information relates to the tire grading system developed by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) which will grade tires by treadwear, traction, and temperature performance.

Note:

Tires that have deep tread, and winter tires, are exempt from these marking requirements.

## UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Quality grades can be found, where applicable, on the tire's sidewall, between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A.**

In addition to the marking requirements, passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements.

## TREADWEAR

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under



controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, this may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

#### Caution:

If treadwear is uneven across the tire, or a tire wears excessively, the vehicle should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer as soon as possible.



When the tread has worn down to approximately 2 mm, wear indicators start to appear at the surface of the tread pattern. This produces a continuous band of rubber across the tread, as a visual indicator.

#### Warning:

Wear indicators show the minimum tread depth recommended by the manufacturers. Tires which have worn to this point will have reduced grip and poor water displacement characteristics. This can lead to accidents causing serious injury or death.

#### Note:

Local legislation may determine a greater tread depth to that shown by the tire wear indicators. It remains the driver's responsibility to make sure that the tread depth meets the local legal requirements. Do not rely on the tread depth indicators alone.

## TRACTION

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

#### Warning:

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## TEMPERATURE

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Safety Standard No. 109.

Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning:

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat build up and possible tire failure.

## TIRE GLOSSARY

**lbf/in<sup>2</sup> or psi:** Pounds per square inch, an imperial unit of measure for

pressure. **kPa:** Kilo Pascal, a metric unit of measure for pressure.

**Cold tire pressure:** The air pressure in a tire which has been standing in excess of 3 hours, or driven for less than 1 mile.

**Maximum inflation pressure:** The maximum pressure to which the tire should be inflated. The pressure is given on the tire's sidewall in lbf/in<sup>2</sup> (psi) and kPa.

Note:

The pressure is the maximum allowed by the tire manufacturer, it is not the pressure recommended for use.

**Curb weight:** The weight of a standard vehicle, including a full tank of fuel, any optional equipment fitted, and with the correct coolant and oil levels.

**Accessory weight:** The combined weight (in excess of those items replaced) of items available as factory fitted equipment.

**Production options weight:** The combined weight of options fitted which weigh in excess of 5 lb (2.3 kg) more than the standard items that they replaced, and are not already considered in curb or accessory weights. Items such as heavy duty brakes, high capacity battery, special trim, etc.

**Vehicle capacity weight:** The number of seats multiplied by 150 lb (68 kg), plus the rated amount of load and luggage.

**Maximum loaded vehicle weight:** The sum of curb weight, accessory weight, vehicle capacity weight, plus any production option weights.

**Rim:** The metal support for a tire, or tire and tube, upon which the tire beads are seated.

**Bead:** The inner edge of a tire that is shaped to fit to the rim and form an airtight seal. The bead is constructed of steel wires which are wrapped, or reinforced, by the ply cords.

**Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW):** The maximum permissible weight of a vehicle with driver, passengers, load, luggage, and equipment.

## STEPS FOR DETERMINING CORRECT LOAD LIMIT

### Warning:

Do not exceed the vehicle's capacity weight (the total weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo) given on the tire information label.

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb" on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lb (635 kg) and there will be five 150 lb (68 kg) passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb (294.8 kg). Calculation:  $(1400 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 650 \text{ lb})$ .
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The number and weight of passengers will affect the cargo and luggage capacity. In the example above, the cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb (294.8 kg). However, if fewer passengers ride in the vehicle, the luggage load capacity will increase. If this vehicle carries three 150 lb (68 kg) passengers, the cargo and luggage load capacity will increase to 950 lb (430.9 kg). Calculation:  $(3 \times 150 = 450 \text{ lb})$ , and  $1400 - 450 = 950 \text{ lb}$ .

If the passengers weigh more, the cargo and luggage load capacity will decrease. Warning:

The weight of accessories must also be subtracted from the cargo and luggage load capacity. If you are unsure of the weight of any accessories fitted to your vehicle, contact a Jaguar retailer/authorized repairer.

### Warning:

Overloading the vehicle will have an adverse effect on braking and handling characteristics, which could compromise your safety. Overloading a vehicle may also cause tire damage or failure. Never overload your vehicle.

## TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

### Warning:

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tires. Tire pressures should be checked regularly, using an accurate pressure gauge when

the tires are cold.

**Warning:**

The TPMS can NOT register damage to a tire. Regularly check the condition of the tires.

**Caution:**

When inflating tires, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure that the inflation head is correctly aligned to the valve stem.

**Caution:**

To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tire inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

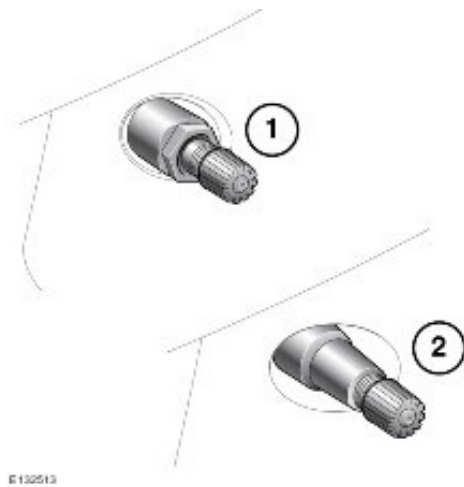
**Note:**

Non-approved accessories may interfere with the system. If this occurs, **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING FAULT** is displayed in the message center.

**Note:**

Different types of tire may affect performance of the TPMS. Always replace tires in accordance with recommendations.

The vehicle is equipped with a TPMS which monitors pressure in each tire. Temporary-use spare wheels (when fitted) are not monitored.



Wheels fitted with a TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Jaguar non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If the vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, the vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your

tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

## TIRE PRESSURE CHECK

The Instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tire pressures. The tire pressure figures can be accessed via the **Vehicle Information** menu.

For more information, see [INSTRUMENT PANEL](#)

[MENU](#). Note:

The tire pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Vehicle Information** and the **Tire Information** menus.

When selected, the last known tire pressures will be displayed, alongside the recommended cold tire pressures (in brackets).

Note:

If any of the wheels or tires have been removed, the displayed tire pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.

## RECOMMENDED TIRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The Instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tire pressures for your vehicle. The tire pressure look-up table can be accessed via the **Vehicle Information** and the **Tire Information** menus.

For more information, see [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Depending on the specification of the vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, for example, high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

## VEHICLE LOADING

When the vehicle is delivered, tire pressures will be set to those displayed on the tire pressure label. See [TIRE PRESSURE LABEL](#).

If the tire pressures are adjusted to the **Light** (comfort) load setting, then the TPMS should be adjusted to suit the vehicle's load and associated recommended tire pressures.

The sensitivity of the TPMS can be adjusted between **Normal** load and **Light** (comfort) load, via the Instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Information**, **Tire Information** and **TPM Load Setting**.

Note:

The ignition needs to be switched on, without the engine running. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Every time the ignition is switched on, a TPMS message is displayed in the Message center, indicating which load setting is being monitored.

Note:

The TPMS setting must correspond with the vehicle's current load.

The **Normal** load setting should be used for heavier vehicle loading conditions up to the Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW), for example, more than three occupants.

The **Light** (comfort) load setting may only be used during use of the vehicle under light loading conditions, for example, up to three occupants.

Note:

Make sure that the tire pressures are correct for the vehicle's current load. See [TIRE PRESSURES](#).

The Instrument panel menus, **Vehicle Information** and **Tire Pressures**, can be used to check the vehicle's current tire pressures.

## FULL SIZE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

The system will automatically recognize any changes in wheel positions. The vehicle must be stationary for 15 minutes during the wheel and tire change, to make sure that the system can detect the change.

After driving above 16 mph (25 km/h), any deflation warning should clear within approximately 5 minutes.

Note:

Following repairs to a full size spare wheel fitted with tire pressure monitoring, the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) warning lamp may illuminate if tire inflation is not carried out within close proximity of the vehicle. Should this occur, re-inflate the tire within 5 m of the vehicle.

## TEMPORARY USE SPARE WHEEL AND TIRE CHANGE

If the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted, the system automatically recognizes the change in wheel

positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 16 mph (25 km/h), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TIRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** is displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp first flashes and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary-use spare wheel will trigger the message **TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), display sequence is activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Note:

If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.

TYPE APPROVAL

NUMBERS TPMS

United States of America:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada:

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) this device may not cause interference, and
- (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Note:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer could void the user's authority to use the equipment.

Type Approval Numbers:

The 433 MHz TPMS radio frequency approval numbers for the USA and Canada are:

<b>USA FCC ID:</b>	KR5S18052020A
	5WK49096
<b>Canada IC:</b>	7812D-S180020A
	267T-5WK49096

## WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

Before raising the vehicle or changing a wheel, make sure that you read and comply with the following warnings:

Warning:

Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.

Switch on the hazard warning lamps to alert all traffic of the obstruction.

Apply the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) and engage transmission P. Switch the engine off and remove the Smart key from the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in unexpected movement of the vehicle, causing serious injury or death.

Warning:

Make sure that all passengers and animals are out of the vehicle and in a safe place, away from the highway.

Warning:

If available, place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.

Warning:

Disconnect any trailer/caravan from the vehicle.

Warning:

Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm, level ground. Do not jack the vehicle if it is over a metal grating or manhole cover.

Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position.

Warning:

Always use the complete jacking lever assembly throughout the tire changing process, to minimize any chance of accidental injury.

Always position the jack from the side of the vehicle, in line with the appropriate jacking point.

Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or between the jack and the vehicle. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point.

Warning:

The jack is designed for wheel changing only.



Never work beneath the vehicle with the jack as the only means of support. Always use correctly rated vehicle support stands, before putting any part of your body beneath the vehicle.

**Warning:**

When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground, transmission Park (**P**) position will not prevent the vehicle from moving and possibly slipping off the jack, as the EPB operates only on the rear wheels. Use a wheel chock when jacking the vehicle.

**Warning:**

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, using the wheel chock supplied in the tool kit. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

**Warning:**

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock will be needed.

**Warning:**

Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached and the wheel nuts may give way suddenly. Either unexpected movement, may cause an injury.

**Warning:**

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.

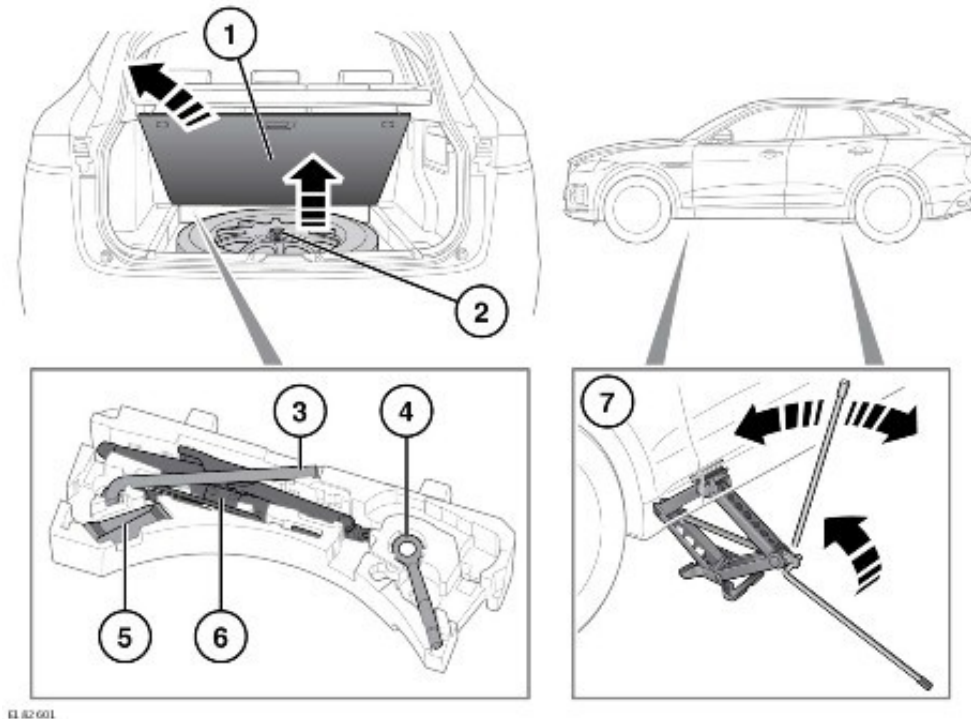
**Warning:**

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle, when raised.

Take care when lifting the spare wheel and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack and the replaced wheel in their correct stowage positions. Such objects, if not properly stowed, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.

## WHEEL CHANGING



1. Luggage compartment floor panel: Lift the rear edge and then pull to remove.

2. Temporary-use spare wheel retaining bolt/clamp.

3. Wheel brace.

4. Towing eye.

5. Wheel chock.

6. Jack assembly: Observe the instructions printed on the jack.

7. There are 4 jacking points on the underside of the vehicle. Two indented, triangular indicators are provided on each sill cover. These indicate the location for the jack.

### Warning:

Do not jack the vehicle under the side steps or side tubes.

### Note:

If your vehicle is fitted with deployable side steps, the side steps must be in the deployed position to allow access to the jacking points.

To deploy the side steps, select **Roof Access** from the **DEPLOYABLE SIDE STEPS** menu. See [EXTRA FEATURES](#).

### Warning:

Remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised.

See [IMPORTANT - USE OF SPARE TIRE](#) and [REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL](#).

**Warning:**

Before raising the vehicle, refer to all Warnings at the beginning of this section of the Owner's Handbook.

Before changing a wheel, read and observe the warnings, see [WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY](#).

**Caution:**

Only jack the vehicle using the jacking points described, or damage to the vehicle could occur.

Before raising the vehicle, use the wheel nut brace to slacken the wheel nuts of the wheel to be replaced, by half a turn counter-clockwise. Use the wheel chock. See [USING WHEEL CHOCKS](#).

1. Open the tailgate. See [OPENING AND CLOSING THE TAILGATE](#).
2. Lift the rear edge and then pull to remove the luggage compartment floor panel.
3. Continually rotate the spare wheel's retaining center clamp plate counter-clockwise to release, and then continually rotate the top plate of the center bolt counter-clockwise, to completely remove the retaining plate/bolt assembly. See [REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL](#).
4. Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle's tool kit.
5. Fit the wheel chocks to the relevant wheel. See [USING WHEEL CHOCKS](#).

**Warning:**

Make sure that the wheel chock is fully engaged with the tire and the road surface.

6. Use the wheel brace to loosen the wheel nuts, by turning half a turn counter-clockwise.

**Warning:**

Do not remove the wheel nuts until the vehicle has been safely and securely raised with the jack.

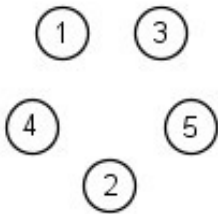
7. Position the jack under the relevant jacking point.

**Note:**

Do not allow the jack to contact the sill at any other point, as damage may result.

8. Turn the jack lever clockwise to raise, until the jack head locates into the jacking point. Make sure that the base of the jack is in full contact with the road surface.
9. Raise the vehicle using the jack, with a slow steady operation. Avoid rapid, jerky actions as they may cause the vehicle/jack to become unstable.
10. Stop when the tire is just clear of the ground.
11. Remove the loosened wheel nuts and place them together where they cannot roll away.

12. Remove the wheel and place to one side. Do not lay the wheel on its face, as this may damage the finish.
13. Fit the spare wheel to the vehicle, by aligning the spare wheel with the vehicle's wheel studs and then slide onto the hub.
14. Refit the wheel nuts and then lightly tighten them in the sequence shown in the illustration. Make sure that the wheel is correctly and evenly fitted to the hub, by checking that each wheel nut is in a similar position.
15. Make sure that the space under the vehicle is clear of obstructions, then lower the vehicle slowly and smoothly.
16. With all wheels on the ground and the jack removed, fully tighten the wheel nuts, in the sequence shown in the illustration, to the correct torque of 98 lb.ft (133 Nm).



6132675

Note:

If it is not possible to torque the wheel nuts when a wheel is replaced, they should be set to the correct torque as soon as possible.

If an alloy spare wheel is to be fitted, using a suitable blunt tool, knock the center cap out of the removed wheel. Using hand pressure only, press the center cap into the newly fitted spare.

Check and adjust the tire pressure as soon as possible. See [TIRE PRESSURES](#).

Note:

Examine the jack occasionally, clean and grease the moving parts, particularly the screw thread, to prevent corrosion.

## REMOVING THE SPARE WHEEL

Warning:

Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilizing the vehicle when raised.

Warning:

Wheels are heavy and if handled incorrectly may cause injury. Use extreme caution when lifting, lowering, and maneuvering the wheels.

Warning:

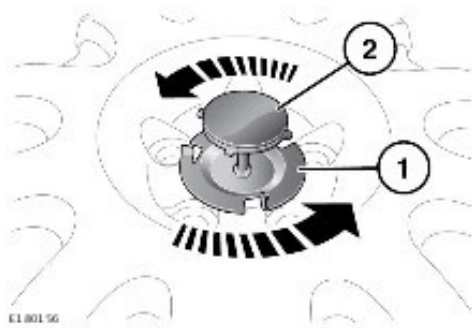
Always secure the spare wheel, or the removed wheel, in the correct position, using the retaining bolt.

Warning:

Do not stow the wheel while the vehicle is raised on the jack.

Warning:

After wheel changing, always secure the tools, jack, and the replaced wheel in their correct stowage positions. Such objects, if not properly stowed, can become propelled objects in a crash or rollover, potentially causing injury or death.



Always remove the spare wheel before jacking the vehicle. Raise and secure the luggage compartment floor panel:

1. Continually rotate the spare wheel center clamp plate counter-clockwise to release.
2. Continually rotate the top plate of the center bolt counter-clockwise to completely remove.

Reverse the whole procedure to refit.

Note:

Before removing the spare wheel, take note of its stowage position. The wheel to be changed must be correctly stowed and secured in its place.

## USING WHEEL CHOCKS

Warning:

Before raising the vehicle, the wheel diagonally opposite the one to be removed must be chocked.

Warning:

Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.

Warning:

If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place the chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An extra chock will be needed.

A wheel chock is stowed in the vehicle's spare wheel tool kit.

## IMPORTANT - USE OF SPARE TIRE

**Warning:**

Adhere to the instructions on the temporary-use spare wheel warning label, affixed to the wheel.

**Warning:**

The temporary-use spare wheel is **FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY**. Make sure that an original size wheel and tire are fitted as soon as possible.

**Warning:**

Do not fit more than one temporary-use spare wheel on the vehicle at any one time.

**Warning:**

Do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) while the temporary-use spare wheel is fitted.

**Warning:**

The temporary-use spare wheel must be inflated to 60 psi (4.2 Bar/420 kPa) and cannot be repaired.

**Warning:**

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) must be switched on while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

**Warning:**

TracDSC must be switched off while the temporary-use spare wheel is in use.

**Warning:**

Traction devices, such as snow chains, cannot be used with a temporary-use spare wheel.

## **RECOVERY METHOD**

The method for recovery or transportation of the vehicle is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

**Caution:**

Make sure that vehicle recovery or transportation is carried out by suitably qualified personnel and the vehicle is secured correctly.

**Caution:**

The recovery agent must activate the transmission park release before recovery commences. This procedure is covered in a separate publication for service personnel. Failure to activate the Transmission park release can result in serious transmission damage.

**Caution:**

During vehicle recovery, the smart key must remain inside the vehicle and the ignition must be switched

on to make sure that the steering column is unlocked.

Note:

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected, the steering column must be unlocked first. It is not possible to unlock the steering column with the battery disconnected.

Caution:

This vehicle should not be towed on all four wheels and should not be recovered with the front or rear wheels suspended. Doing so can result in serious transmission damage.

## FRONT TOWING EYE

Warning:

The towing eye at the front of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Warning:

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

The towing eye is located under the luggage compartment floor panel.



The front towing point is located behind a small access panel in the front bumper.

To fit the towing eye:

1. Press the lower edge of the front bumper's access panel to release the retaining clip and then remove the cover.

Note:

Note the orientation of the access cover to aid refitting.

2. Locate the towing point through the front bumper and fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point, until secure.

Note:

Pass the vehicle's wheel brace through the towing eye, to act as a lever to help rotate the towing eye until it is completely tight.

To refit the access panel, align the lug into the recess in the bumper and then lightly press the opposite edge to engage the retaining clip.

Warning:

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury.

## REAR TOWING EYE

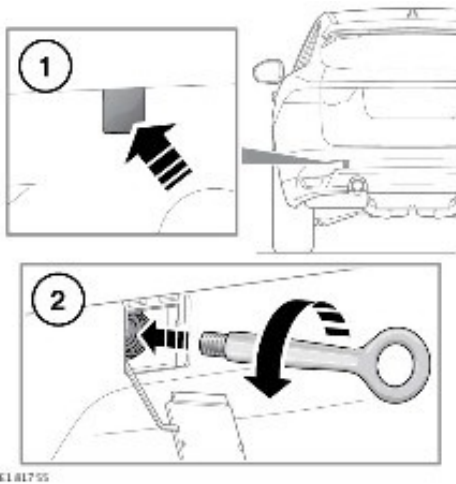
Warning:

The towing eye at the rear of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only. If it is used for any other purpose, it may result in vehicle damage and serious injury.

Warning:

Use extreme caution when moving or towing the vehicle. Death or serious injury may occur.

The towing eye is located under the luggage compartment floor panel.



The rear towing point is located behind a small access panel in the rear bumper.

To fit the towing eye:

1. Press the lower edge of the rear bumper's access panel to release the retaining clip and then remove the cover.

Note:

Note the orientation of the access cover to aid refitting.



2. Locate the towing point through the rear bumper and fully screw the towing eye counter-clockwise into the towing point, until secure.

Note:

Pass the vehicle's wheel brace through the towing eye, to act as a lever to help rotate the towing eye until it is completely tight.

To refit the access panel, align the lug into the recess in the bumper and then lightly press the opposite edge to engage the retaining clip.

Warning:

Use extreme caution when detaching towing equipment. Vehicle movement is possible, which can result in serious injury.

## OFF-ROAD RECOVERY

Warning:

If the towing points are to be used for off-road recovery, it is essential that off-road driver training, covering recovery techniques is undertaken.

Further information on off-road driver training can be found at: **[www.landroverexperience.com](http://www.landroverexperience.com)**.

## BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING

Warning:

If the vehicle is involved in a collision, it should be checked by a retailer/authorized repairer, or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

Note:

If the vehicle has an SOS Emergency Call button and an Optimized Assistance Call button. See [INCONTROL PROTECT](#).

## EVENT DATA RECORDING

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

1. How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
2. Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
3. How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,

#### 4. How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note:

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

### SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in the vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about the vehicle. Potentially this includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, accelerator pedal, steering, or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service the vehicle, a retailer/authorized repairer may access the vehicle's diagnostic information, through a direct connection to the vehicle.

### LABEL LOCATIONS

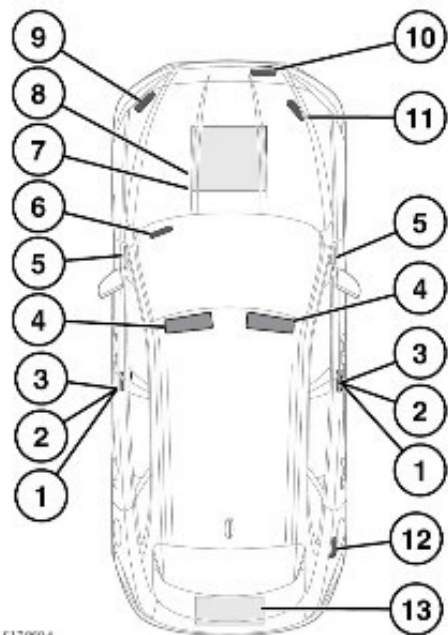


Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilizes very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the ignition is switched on.

Extra information labels may also be found at these locations:



1. The vehicle weights and the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar.

The VIN can also be shown in the Message center via the **Vehicle Information** and **Vehicle VIN** menus. See [INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU](#).

Note:

If you need to communicate with a Retailer/Authorized Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.

2. Tire pressure label: Located at the base of the driver's side B pillar.
3. Air bag warning label: Located midway up the B pillar.
4. Air bag label: Located on the sun visors.
5. Passenger air bag label: Located at the passenger end of the facia panel.
6. VIN: Stamped on a plate, which is visible through the bottom left side of the windshield.
7. Engine serial number: Stamped into the left side, rear of the engine casing.
8. Engine serial number label: Located at the top of the engine. Remove the engine cover for access.
9. Air Conditioning (A/C) label: Located on the left-side hood locking platform.
10. Exhaust emissions label: Located on the underside of the bonnet.
11. VIN number: Stamped onto the suspension turret.
12. Fuel specification label: Located on the inside face of the fuel filler flap.
13. Battery warning symbols label: Located on the top face of the vehicle's main battery, underneath

the luggage compartment floor panel.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely. Using the index at the back of this handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

## ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

Engine variant	Number of cylinders	Displacement (cc)	Compression ratio
2.0L diesel	4	1999	15.5:1
3.0L gasoline	6	2998	10.5:1

Note:

For further information, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See [LABEL LOCATIONS](#).

## LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Variant	Specification
Engine oil	3.0L gasoline	SAE 0W-20 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	2.0L diesel	SAE 0W-30 meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5007.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel	AdBlue meeting ISO standard 22241-1. Diesel Exhaust Fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32
Brake fluid	All vehicles	It is recommended to use Jaguar brake fluid. If unavailable, then brake fluid meeting specification DOT4 ISO 4925 Class 6 may be used.
Washer fluid	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water, as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid	All vehicles	Mixture of 50% water and 50% antifreeze meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.651.5003.
Air conditioning refrigerant	All vehicles	R1234YF.
Air conditioning compressor oil	All vehicles	SP-A2.

If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid, seek advice from a Retailer/Authorized Repairer.



**Castrol EDGE Professional** exclusively recommended by Jaguar.

## WEIGHTS

Variant	Vehicle weight from lbs (kg)	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) <sup>1</sup> lbs (kg)	Maximum front axle load <sup>2</sup> lbs (kg)	Maximum rear axle load <sup>2</sup> lbs (kg)
3.0L gasoline	4 015 (1 821)	5 512 (2 500)	2 712 (1 230)	3 131 (1 420)
2.0L diesel	3 913 (1 775)	5 423 (2 460)	2 579 (1 170)	3 131 (1 420)

1 The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle, including all the passengers and the vehicle's payload (e.g., luggage compartment weight, roof rack weight, accessory equipment, etc.).

2 The front and rear axle maximum weights cannot be reached simultaneously, as this will exceed the GVW limit.

Make sure that the luggage compartment weight does not exceed the maximum rear axle load or the GVW.

Warning:

The maximum permitted roof load, including the weight of the roof rack/roof bars, is 165 lbs (75 kg). The roof load must be included when calculating the GVW.

Caution:

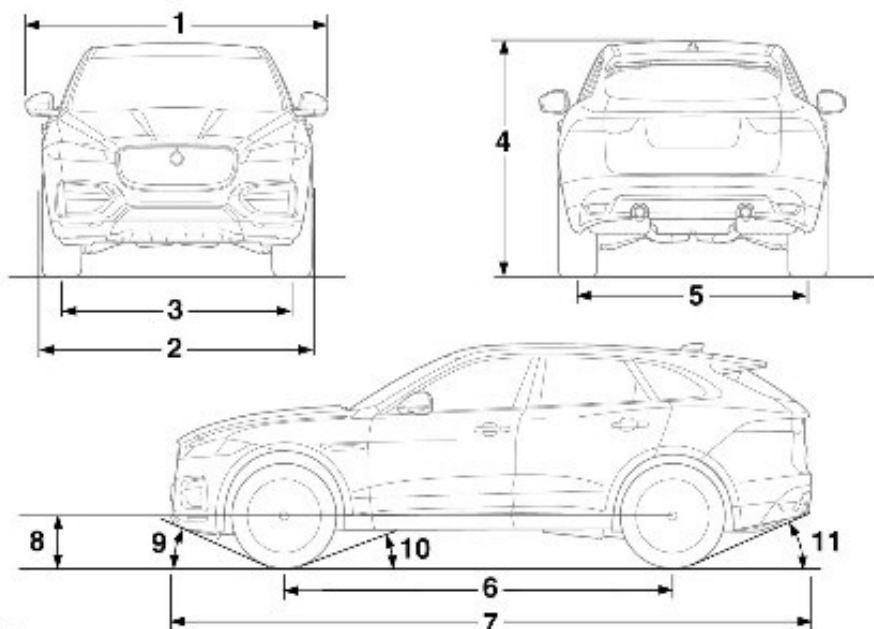
It is recommended, that only accessories approved by the vehicle manufacturer are used. If in any doubt, consult a Retailer/Authorized Repairer before fitting a roof rack/roof bars or carrying a roof load.

Note:

For further information, contact a Retailer/Authorized Repairer and quote the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). See [LABEL LOCATIONS](#).

For towing weights, see [TOWING WEIGHTS](#).

## DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	Variant	inches (mm)
1	Width (including mirrors)	All vehicles	85.6 (2 175)
2	Width (with mirrors folded)	All vehicles	81.5 (2 070)
3	Track - front	All vehicles	64.6 (1 641)
4	Height (including roof antennae)	All vehicles	65.6 (1 667)
5	Track - rear	All vehicles	65.1 (1 654)
6	Wheelbase	All vehicles	113.2 (2 874)
7	Length (including licence plate plinth)	All vehicles	186.8 (4 746)
8	Maximum wading depth	All vehicles	20.7 (525)
	Maximum wading speed is 4 mph (7 km/h)	All vehicles	-
	Turning circle (curb to curb)	All vehicles	38.9 feet (11.9 meters)
9	Approach angle	All vehicles	25.0°
10	Ramp breakover angle	All vehicles	20.4°
11	Departure angle	Vehicles without a tow bar	25.7°
		Vehicles with a tow bar	20.1°
		Tow bar with tow hitch fitted	17.4°

## CAPACITIES

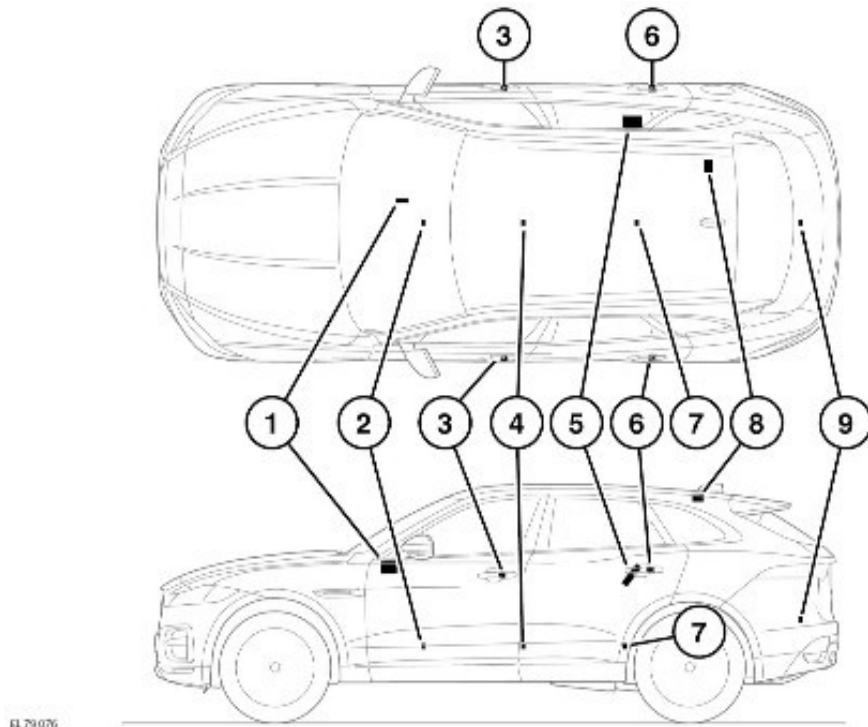
Item	Variant	Capacity - pints (liters)
Fuel tank (usable)	3.0L gasoline	16.6 gallons (63)
	2.0L diesel	15.9 gallons (60)
Engine oil refill and filter change	3.0L gasoline	6.3 US QT (6.0)
	2.0L diesel	6.8 US QT (6.5)
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel	35.9 (17)
Washer reservoir	All vehicles	11.9 (5.65)
Engine cooling system	3.0L gasoline	16.3 (7.7)
	2.0L diesel	16.3 (7.7)
Air conditioning refrigerant	All vehicles	1.2 lb (550 g)
Air conditioning compressor oil	All vehicles	2.7 oz (80 ml)

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks or information displayed in the Message center, as applicable.

Caution:

Do not overfill the DEF reservoir, or damage to the vehicle may occur.

## SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



1. Cabin facia transmitter.
2. Cabin front floor transmitter.
3. Front door handle transmitters.
4. Cabin middle floor transmitter.
5. Keyless vehicle module.
6. Rear door handle transmitters.
7. Cabin rear floor transmitter.
8. Cabin rear roof transmitter.
9. Luggage compartment transmitter.

#### Warning:

Any person fitted with an implanted medical device (e.g., pacemaker) should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 8.7 inches (22 cm) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and the device.

#### RADIOFREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

##### USA:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Canada:

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard IC - RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) this device may not cause interference, and

(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radio Frequency (RF) approval numbers:

The key system transmitter Radio Frequency (RF) approval numbers for the USA and Canada are shown below:

<b>USA FCC ID:</b>	KOBTJF10B
	KOBLR09A
	KOBBG10A
	KOBBG10B
<b>Canada IC:</b>	3521A-JTF10B
	3521-JLR09A
	3521-JBG10A
	3521-JBG10B
<b>Model number:</b>	EW93-15K601-A
	AH42-15K602-A
	FK72-19H440 (PEPS) FK72-19H440 (passive only)
	FK72-19H440 (PEPS) FK72-19H440 (passive only)

Note:

The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio interference or TV interference caused by unauthorized modifications to this equipment. Changes or modifications, not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance, could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Caution:

The Smart key may suffer interference from other legal users of this RF band, such as radio amateurs, medical equipment, remote controls or alarm systems. To lock or unlock the vehicle in such a situation, either use a key or operate the key transmitter as close to the security antenna as possible.